



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

STUDENTS' SERIES
FOR SCHOOLS, COLLEGE, AND LIBRARIES.

TOM BROWN'S
SCHOOL DAYS.

BY AN OLD BOY.

PART II.

STUDENTS' TAUCHNITZ EDITION.

Mit deutschen Erklärungen

von

Dr. Immanuel Schmidt,

Professor an der st. Johannebanstalt zu Klosterfelde.

LEIPZIG

BERNHARD TAUCHNITZ

1888.

823.6

H89ta

From the Ewald Flügel Library



LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

EWALD FLÜGEL
1887
PALO ALTO CAL.

823.6
Herta

STUDENTS' SERIES
FOR
SCHOOL, COLLEGE, AND HOME.

EDITED BY LUDWIG HERRIG.

TOM BROWN'S SCHOOL DAYS.

BY AN OLD BOY.

PART II.

TOM BROWN'S
SCHOOL DAYS.

BY AN OLD BOY.

PART II.

STUDENTS' TAUCHNITZ EDITION.

Mit deutschen Erklärungen

von

Dr. Immanuel Schmidt,

Professor an der K. Hauptkadettenanstalt zu Richtenfelde.

Thos. Hughes

STANFORD LIBRARY

LEIPZIG

BERNHARD TAUCHNITZ

1888.

219306

YANGLI GONGHAI

V o r w o r t.

Der Herausgeber würde die schwierige Aufgabe, Tom Brown's School Days zu erklären, nicht in genügender Weise haben lösen können, wenn er nicht in dem Supplement-Verikon seines Freundes, des Herrn Professor Dr. A. Hoppe, gründliche Vorarbeiten gefunden hätte. Von den früheren Ausgaben bietet die von Riedl nur Einleitung und Glossar, die von Pfeffer und Thiem umfassen nicht das ganze Werk. Einiges wenige ist aus denselben mit Angabe des Ursprungs aufgenommen. Das wertvollste Material aber verdankt der Herausgeber brieflichen Mitteilungen. Er spricht seinen Dank zunächst dem Verfasser des Werkes selbst aus, von dem er durch Vermittlung des leider früh verstorbenen Militärlehrers an der königlichen Hauptkadettenanstalt, Hauptmann Fontane, sehr wertvolle Aufschlüsse erhalten hat. Als Freund des Werkes hat sich außerdem besonders Herr George Stallard, Lehrer der Schule von Rugby, erwiesen, indem er auf die zukommendste Weise Nachforschungen angestellt und die Ergebnisse übersandt hat. Unterstützung hat die Arbeit ferner gefunden durch die Herren Dr. Hausknecht in Tokio, Professor Napier in Oxford, Professor Dr. Rupika in Berlin und Professor Dr. Koch in Braunschweig, welcher letztere den Anhang über das Cricketspiel durchgesehen hat. Allen diesen Gelehrten spricht der Unterzeichnete für ihre Beiträge zu der Ausgabe seinen tiefgefühlten Dank aus.

Lichterfelde, den 28. Februar 1888.

Professor Dr. Immanuel Schmidt.

Inhalt.

PART II.

TOM BROWN'S SCHOOL DAYS.

	Seite
CHAPTER I. How the Tide turned	I
— II. The new Boy	17
— III. Arthur makes a Friend	36
— IV. The Bird-Fanciers	56
— V. The Fight	73
— VI. Fever in the School	98
— VII. Harry East's Dilemmas and Deliverances . .	120
— VIII. Tom Brown's last Match	142
— IX. Finis	174
Anhang	184
Verbesserungen und Nachträge	189

Der Text der vorliegenden Ausgabe entspricht genau dem der Londoner.

Die Seitenzahlen der Tauchnitz Edition sind am Rande angegeben; auf diese, nicht auf die Seitenzahlen in Students' Series, beziehen sich alle Citate in den Anmerkungen.

TOM BROWN'S SCHOOL DAYS.

PART II.

"I [hold] it truth, with him who sings
To one clear harp in divers tones,
That men may rise on stepping-stones
Of their dead selves to higher things."

TENNYSON¹.

Chapter I.

How the Tide turned.

"Once to every man and nation, comes the moment to decide,
In the strife of Truth with Falsehood, for the good or evil side:

* * * * *

Then it is the brave man chooses, while the coward stands aside,
Doubting in his abject spirit, till his Lord is crucified."

LOWELL².

The turning-point in our hero's school career had now come, and the manner of it was as follows. On the evening of the first day of the next half-year, Tom, East, and another School-house boy, who had just been dropped³ at the Spread Eagle by the old Regulator, rushed into the matron's room in high spirits, such as all real boys are in when they first get back, however fond they may be of home.

¹ I [hold] it truth. Bei Tenn. In Mem. 1 steht I held it truth.

² The Poetical Works of James Russell Lowell, Miscellaneous Poems, The Present Crisis. Hughes steht mit Lowell, dem gefeiertsten der lebenden Dichter Amerikas, in freundschaftlicher Beziehung, was schon daraus erhellt, daß er die englische Ausgabe der Biglow Papers besorgt hat.

³ to drop: einen Passagier absetzen. The Spread Eagle, siehe S. 75.

"Well, Mrs. Wixie," shouted one, seizing on¹ the methodical, active little dark-eyed woman, who was busy stowing away the linen of the boys who had already arrived into their several pigeon-holes², "here we are again, you see, as jolly as ever. Let us help you put the things away."

182 "And, Mary," cried another (she was called differently by either name), "who's come back? Has the Doctor made old Jones leave? How many new boys are there?"

"Am I and East to have Gray's study? You know you promised to get it for us if you could," shouted Tom.

"And am I to sleep in Number 4?" roared East.

"How's old Sam, and Bogle, and Sally?"

"Bless the boys³!" cries Mary, at last getting in a word⁴, "why, you'll shake me to death⁵. There now, do go away up to the housekeeper's room and get your suppers; you know I haven't time to talk—you'll find plenty more⁶ in the house. Now, Master East, do let those things alone—you're mixing up three new boys' things." And she rushed at East, who escaped round the open trunks holding up a prize.

"Hullo, look here, Tommy," shouted he, "here's fun!" and he brandished above his head some pretty little night-caps, beautifully made and marked, the

¹ to seize on: in Beschlag nehmen. Pfeffer. Methodical: peinlich genau, etwas pedantisch.

² pigeon-holes, sonst: Fächer am Schreibtische für Briefe und Schriftstücke, hier: Fächer zur Aufbewahrung der Wäsche für die einzelnen Zöglinge des Pensionats. Vgl. S. 78. Eine Grabkammer hieß bei den Römern columbarium wegen der Nischen, in denen die Urnen standen.

³ Bless the boys! Gadermentsche Jungen!

⁴ getting in a word: zu Worte kommend. Pfeffer.

⁵ you'll shake me to death: ihr werdet mich noch tot machen mit eurem Drängen und Stoßen.

⁶ plenty more: noch viele andere Knaben.

work of loving fingers in some distant country home. The kind mother and sisters, who sewed that delicate stitching with aching hearts, little thought of the trouble they might be bringing on the young head for which they were meant. The little matron was wiser, and snatched the caps from East before he could look at the name on them.

"Now, Master East, I shall be very angry if you don't go," said she; "there's some capital cold beef and pickles up-stairs, and I won't have you old boys in my room first night."

"Hurrah for the pickles! Come along, Tommy; come along, Smith. We shall find out who the young Count is, I'll be bound¹: I hope he'll sleep in my room. Mary's always vicious² first week."

As the boys turned to leave the room, the matron touched Tom's arm, and said, "Master Brown, please 183 stop a minute, I want to speak to you."

"Very well, Mary. I'll come in a minute: East, don't finish the pickles—"

"Oh, Master Brown," went on the little matron, when the rest had gone, "you're to have Gray's study, Mrs. Arnold says. And she wants you to take in this young gentleman. He's a new boy, and thirteen years old, though he don't look it³. He's very delicate, and has never been from home before. And I told Mrs. Arnold I thought you'd be kind to him, and see that they don't bully him at first. He's put into your form, and I've given him the bed next to yours in Number 4; so East can't sleep there this half."

Tom was rather put about by this speech. He had got the double study which he coveted, but here were conditions attached which greatly moderated his joy. He looked across the room, and in the far

¹ I'll be bound: dafür will ich gutfagen, ich wette darauf.

² vicious: müdſig; eigentlich von Pferden.

³ he don't (doesn't) look it: he looks much younger.

corner of the sofa was aware of a slight pale boy, with large blue eyes and light fair hair, who seemed ready to shrink through the floor. He saw at a glance that the little stranger was just the boy whose first half-year at a public school would be misery to himself if he were left alone, or constant anxiety to any one who meant to see¹ him through his troubles. Tom was too honest to take in the youngster and then let him shift for himself; and if he took him as his chum instead of East, where were all his pet plans of having a bottled-beer cellar under his window, and making night-lines and slings, and plotting expeditions to Brownsover Mills and Caldecott's Spinney²? East and he had made up their minds to get this study, and then every night from locking-up till ten they would be together to talk about fishing, drink bottled-beer, read Marryat's³ novels, and sort birds' eggs. And this new boy would most likely never go out of the close, and would be afraid of
 184 wet feet, and always getting laughed at and called Molly, or Jenny⁴, or some derogatory feminine nickname.

The matron watched him for a moment, and saw what was passing in his mind, and so, like a wise negotiator, threw in an appeal to his warm heart. "Poor little fellow," said she in almost a whisper, "his father's dead, and he's got no brothers. And his mamma, such a kind sweet lady, almost broke

¹ to see, wie to see a lady home: nach Hause begleiten. Vgl. to see fair play, S. 161.

² Brownsover Mills, eine halbe englische Meile südöstlich von Brownsover. (S. 164.) Caldecott's Spinney (S. 6), südwestlich von Rugby. ³ Captain Frederick Marryat (1786—1848), Verfasser von Seeromanen.

⁴ Molly (Mary) or Jenny (Jane), etwa: Gottchen oder Lieschen. Molly erinnert an a mollycoddle, einen Weichling, der sich unter Weibern verhält und mit Vorliebe Weiberarbeit vornimmt. Jenny deutet eine kleine Zierfiese an. Jenny-wren, provinziell jenny-crudle, ist der Baumkönig, jenny-tit, die Blaumeise.

her heart at leaving him this morning; and she said one of his sisters was like to die of decline, and so——”

“Well, well,” burst in Tom, with something like a sigh at the effort, “I suppose I must give up East. Come along, young un. What’s your name? We’ll go and have some supper, and then I’ll show you our study.”

“His name’s George Arthur,” said the matron, walking up to him with Tom, who grasped his little delicate hand as the proper preliminary to making a chum of him, and felt as if he could have blown him away. “I’ve had his books and things put into the study, which his mamma has had new papered, and the sofa covered, and new green-baize¹ curtains over the door” (the diplomatic matron threw this in, to show that the new boy was contributing largely to the partnership comforts). “And Mrs. Arnold told me to say,” she added, “that she should like you both to come up to tea with her. You know the way, Master Brown, and the things² are just gone up, I know.”

Here was an announcement for Master Tom! He was to go up to tea the first night, just as if he were a sixth or fifth-form boy, and of importance in the school world, instead of the most reckless young scapegrace amongst the fags. He felt himself lifted on to a higher social and moral platform³ at once. Nevertheless, he couldn’t give up without a sigh the idea of the jolly supper in the housekeeper’s room with East and the rest, and a rush round to all the studies of his friends afterwards, to pour out the 185 deeds and wonders of the holidays, to plot fifty plans for the coming half-year, and to gather news of who

¹ baize, siehe S. 80.

² the things; the tea-things: das Theezug, Geschirr.

³ a higher moral and social platform: eine höhere Stufe sittlicher und gesellschaftlicher Würde.

had left, and what new boys had come, who had got who's study¹, and where the new præpostors slept. However, Tom consoled himself with thinking that he couldn't have done all this with the new boy at his heels, and so marched off along the passages to the Doctor's private house with his young charge in tow, in monstrous good humour with himself and all the world.

It is needless, and would be impertinent², to tell how the two young boys were received in that drawing-room. The lady who presided there is still living, and has carried with her to her peaceful home in the North³ the respect and love of all those who ever felt and shared that gentle and high-bred hospitality. Ay, many is the brave heart now doing its work and bearing its load in country curacies⁴, London chambers⁵, under the Indian sun, and in Australian towns and clearings, which looks back with fond and grateful memory to that School-house drawing-room, and dates much of its highest and best training to the lessons learnt there.

Besides Mrs. Arnold and one or two of the elder children, there were one of the younger masters, young Brooke—who was now in the sixth, and had

¹ who had got who's study. Die im Griechischen gewöhnliche Zusammenziehung zweier Fragen zu einer mit doppeltem Fragewort ist in modernen Sprachen nur eine Form des nachlässigen Konversationsstils und hat etwas Komisches, das hier erhöht wird durch die Form *who's* (für *whose*).

² impertinent: nicht zur Sache gehörig (nicht: tactlos).

³ her peaceful home in the North. Fox Howe, Dedication to Mrs. Arnold. His Westmoreland home, Fox How, a small estate between Rydal and Ambleside, which he purchased in 1832. Stanley, *Life and Correspondence of T. Arnold*. I, p. 237. Vergl. S. 292. The Doctor started for the Lakes yesterday morning.

⁴ curacy: die Stelle eines curate, des von dem Inhaber einer Pfründe privatim gehaltenen und meistens kümmerlich bezahlten Hilfspredigers.

⁵ London Chambers, siehe S. 3.

succeeded to his brother's position and influence—and another sixth-form boy there, talking together before the fire. The master and young Brooke, now a great strapping fellow six feet high, eighteen years old, and powerful as a coal-heaver, nodded kindly to Tom, to his intense glory, and then went on talking; the other did not notice them. The hostess, after a few kind words, which led the boys at once and insensibly to feel at their ease, and to begin talking to one another, left them with her own children while she finished a letter. The young ones got on fast and well, Tom holding forth¹ about a prodigious pony he had been riding out hunting, and hearing 186 stories of the winter glories of the lakes², when tea came in, and immediately after the Doctor himself.

How frank, and kind, and manly, was his greeting to the party by the fire! It did Tom's heart good to see him and young Brooke shake hands, and look one another in the face; and he didn't fail to remark, that Brooke was nearly as tall, and quite as broad as the Doctor. And his cup was full³, when in another moment his master turned to him with another warm shake of the hand, and, seemingly oblivious of all the late scrapes which he had been getting into, said, "Ah, Brown, you here! I hope you left your father and all well at home?"

"Yes, sir, quite well."

"And this is the little fellow who is to share your study. Well, he doesn't look as we should like to see him. He wants some Rugby air, and cricket. And you must take him some good long walks, to Bilton Grange⁴ and Caldecott's Spinney, and show

¹ to hold forth: sich ergeben, viel erzählen.

² the lakes of Westmoreland. Vergl. S. 185³ und S. 292.

³ his cup was full: das Maß seines Erstaunens und Entzückens war voll.

⁴ Bilton Grange, etwa 2 englische Meilen südsüdöstlich von Rugby. Caldecott's Spinney, siehe S. 183.

him what a little pretty country we have about here."

Tom wondered if the Doctor knew that his visits to Bilton Grange were for the purpose of taking rooks' nests (a proceeding strongly discountenanced by the owner thereof), and those to Caldecott's Spinney were prompted chiefly by the conveniences for setting night-lines. What didn't the Doctor know? And what a noble use he always made of it! He almost resolved to abjure rook-pies¹ and night-lines for ever. The tea went merrily off, the Doctor now talking of holiday doings, and then of the prospects of the half-year, what chance there was for the Balliol scholarship², whether the eleven would be a good one³. Every body was at his ease, and every body felt that he, young as he might be, was of some use in the little school world, and had a work to do there.

187 Soon after tea the Doctor went off to his study, and the young boys a few minutes afterwards took their leave, and went out of the private door which led from the Doctor's house into the middle passage.

At the fire, at the further end of the passage, was a crowd of boys in loud talk and laughter. There was a sudden pause when the door opened, and then a great shout of greeting, as Tom was recognised marching down the passage.

"Hullo, Brown, where do you come from?"

"Oh, I've been to tea with the Doctor," says Tom, with great dignity.

"My eye⁴!" cried East. "Oh! so that's why Mary

¹ rook-pies: sehr beliebte Pasteten. Vergl. S. 218.

² the Balliol scholarship, siehe S. 104. Welche Aussicht vor-
handen wäre, daß ein Schüler von Rugby sie gewänne.

³ the eleven: die besten Cricket-Spieler. Als regelmäßige Zahl
der Partei ist die Zahl hier als Singular behandelt (a good one).

⁴ My eye! (God) bless my eye, Ausruf unglaublicher Ver-
wunderung, wie sonst my stars, (God) bless me, bless my heart,
bless my soul: meiner Seele. Anders wird gebraucht (it is) all my

called you back, and you didn't come to supper. You lost something—that beef and pickles was no end good¹."

"I say, young fellow," cried Hall, detecting Arthur, and catching him by the collar, "what's your name? Where do you come from? How old are you?"

Tom saw Arthur shrink back, and look scared as all the group turned to him, but thought it best to let him answer, just standing by his side to support in case of need.

"Arthur, sir. I come from Devonshire²."

"Don't call me 'sir,' you young muff³. How old are you?"

"Thirteen."

"Can you sing?"

The poor boy was trembling and hesitating. Tom struck in—"You be hanged, Tadpole. He'll have to sing, whether he can or not, Saturday twelve weeks, and that's long enough off yet."

"Do you know him at home, Brown?"

"No; but he's my chum in Gray's old study, and it's near prayer time, and I haven't had a look at it yet. Come along, Arthur."

Away went the two, Tom longing to get his

eye = it is moonshine, it is humbug: es ist lauter Schwindel. Der Zufall in it is all my eye and Betty Martin deutet nach dem Slang Dict. hin auf oh m'hi bēa'tē Martīnē (a wie in far).

¹ no end good: unendlich gut. S. 218: We'll be no end quiet. Das adverbial gebrauchte no end erinnert an den biblischen Ausdruck world (time) without end, in saecula saeculorum. Substantivisch ist es in no end (plenty, a deal) of good things, of porter u. dergl.

² I come from Devonshire, als Antwort auf where do you come from? Siehe S. 78. Dēv'onshire: Grafschaft vom Kanal La Manche bis an den Kanal von Bristol, westlich von Cornwall, östlich an Dorsetshire und Somersetshire angrenzend, mit Exeter als county-town.

³ muff, siehe S. 109.

charge safe under cover, where he might advise him on his deportment.

188 "What a queer chum for Tom Brown," was the comment at the fire; and it must be confessed so thought Tom himself, as he lighted his candle, and surveyed the new green-baize curtains and the carpet and sofa with much satisfaction.

"I say, Arthur, what a brick¹ your mother is to make us so cosy. But look here now, you must answer straight up² when the fellows speak to you, and don't be afraid. If you're afraid, you'll get bullied. And don't you say you can sing; and don't you ever talk about home, or your mother and sisters."

Poor little Arthur looked ready to cry.

"But please," said he, "mayn't I talk about—about home to you?"

"Oh yes, I like it. But don't talk to boys you don't know, or they'll call you home-sick, or mamma's darling, or some such stuff. What a jolly³ desk! Is that yours? And what stunning⁴ binding! why, your school-books look like novels!"

And Tom was soon deep in Arthur's goods and chattels⁵, all new and good enough for a fifth-form boy, and hardly thought of his friends outside, till the prayer-bell rung.

I have already described the School-house prayers; they were the same on the first night as on the other nights, save for the gaps caused by the absence of those boys who came late, and the line of new boys who stood all together at the further table—of all sorts and sizes, like young bears⁶ with all their

¹ brick (a trump, S. 98), selten wie hier von einer Dame.

² straight up: gerade ins Gesicht.

³ jolly, siehe S. 100. ⁴ Stunning, siehe S. 97.

⁵ goods and chattels: Hab' und Gut. Chattels (wie cattle von capitale) ist ein juristischer Ausdruck (to seize a man's goods and chattels), zerfallend in real chattels (Realbesitz, liegende Güter) und personal chattels (bewegliche Habe).

⁶ like young bears, siehe S. 61.

troubles to come, as Tom's father had said to him when he was in the same position. He thought of it as he looked at the line, and poor little slight Arthur standing with them, and as he was leading him up-stairs to Number 4, directly after prayers, and showing him his bed. It was a huge high airy room, with two large windows looking on to the School close. There were twelve beds in the room. The one in the furthest corner by the fire-place, occupied by the sixth-form boy who was responsible for the discipline of the room, and the rest by boys ¹⁸⁹ in the lower-fifth and other junior forms, all fags (for the fifth-form boys, as has been said, slept in rooms by themselves). Being fags, the eldest of them was not more than about sixteen years old, and were all bound to be up¹ and in bed by ten; the sixth-form boys came to bed from ten to a quarter-past (at which time the old verger came round to put the candles out), except when they sat up to read.

Within a few minutes therefore of their entry, all the other boys who slept in Number 4 had come up. The little fellows went quietly to their own beds, and began undressing and talking to each other in whispers; while the elder, amongst whom was Tom, sat chatting about on one another's beds, with their jackets and waistcoats off. Poor little Arthur was overwhelmed with the novelty of his position. The idea of sleeping in the room with strange boys had clearly never crossed his mind before, and was as painful as it was strange to him. He could hardly bear to take his jacket off; however, presently, with an effort, off it came, and then he paused and looked at Tom, who was sitting at the bottom of his bed talking and laughing.

¹ to be up, sonst: auf (aufgestanden) sein, hier: oben sein; denn das Schlafzimmer ist im oberen Stockwerk. Statt and were all bound ist wohl zu lesen they were all bound.

"Please, Brown," he whispered, "may I wash my face and hands?"

"Of course, if you like," said Tom, staring; "that's your washhand-stand, under the window, second from your bed. You'll have to go down for more water in the morning if you use it all." And on he went with his talk, while Arthur stole timidly from between the beds out to his washhand-stand, and began his ablutions, thereby drawing for a moment on himself the attention of the room.

On went the talk and laughter. Arthur finished his washing and undressing, and put on his night-gown¹. He then looked round more nervously than ever. Two or three of the little boys were already
190 in bed, sitting up with their chins on their knees. The light burned clear, the noise went on. It was a trying moment for the poor little lonely boy; however, this time he didn't ask Tom what he might or might not do, but dropped on his knees by his bedside, as he had done every day from his childhood, to open his heart to Him who heareth the cry and beareth the sorrows of the tender child, and the strong man in agony.

Tom was sitting at the bottom of his bed unlacing his boots, so that his back was towards Arthur, and he didn't see what had happened, and looked up in wonder at the sudden silence. Then two or three boys laughed and sneered, and a big brutal fellow, who was standing in the middle of the room, picked up a slipper, and shied it at the kneeling boy, calling him a snivelling young shaver².

¹ night-gown, hier für night-shirt.

² snivelling (siehe S. 148) young shaver: ein lumpiger kleiner Milchbart. Shaver, 1. a cunning shaver, a sharp fellow (to shave a customer, to charge him more for an article than the marked price), 2. a young shaver: ein junger Fant; an old shaver: ein alter Peter; a rum shaver: ein schnurriger Kauz. Bartpußer (in Grimms Märchen von Fuchs und Rabe), wretched shaver. Grimm's Household Stories, Lond. 1862, p. 225.

Then Tom saw the whole, and the next moment the boot he had just pulled off flew straight at the head of the bully, who had just time to throw up his arm and catch it on his elbow.

"Confound you¹, Brown, what's that for?" roared he, stamping with pain.

"Never mind what I mean," said Tom, stepping on to the floor, every drop of blood in his body tingling; "if any fellow wants the other boot, he knows how to get it."

What would have been the result is doubtful, for at this moment the sixth-form boy came in, and not another word could be said. Tom and the rest rushed into bed and finished their unrobing there, and the old verger, as punctual as the clock², had put out the candle in another minute, and toddled on to the next room, shutting their door with his usual "Good night, genl'm'n."

There were many boys in the room by whom that little scene was taken to heart before they slept. But sleep seemed to have deserted the pillow of poor Tom. For some time his excitement, and the flood of memories which chased one another through ¹⁹¹ his brain, kept him from thinking or resolving. His head throbbed, his heart leapt³, and he could hardly keep himself from springing out of bed and rushing about the room. Then the thought of his own mother came across him, and the promise he had made at her knee, years ago, never to forget to kneel by his bedside, and give himself up to his Father, before he laid his head on the pillow, from which it might never rise; and he lay down gently and cried

¹ Confound you: *hol' dich der Senter.*

² as punctual as the clock, *siehe* §. 170.

³ his heart leapt. Wordsw. My heart leaps up when I behold A rainbow in the sky. Dick. Christm. Car. p. 39. Why did his heart leap up as they went past?

as if his heart would break. He was only fourteen years old.

It was no light act of courage in those days, my dear boys, for a little fellow to say his prayers publicly, even at Rugby. A few years later, when Arnold's manly piety had begun to leaven¹ the School the tables turned²; before he died, in the School-house at least, and I believe in the other houses, the rule was the other way. But poor Tom had come to school in other times. The first few nights after he came he did not kneel down because of the noise, but sat up in bed till the candle was out, and then stole out and said his prayers³ in fear, lest some one should find him out. So did many another poor little fellow. Then he began to think that he might just as well say his prayers in bed, and then that it didn't matter whether he was kneeling, or sitting, or lying down. And so it had come to pass with Tom as with all who will not confess their Lord before men: and for the last year he had probably not said his prayers in earnest a dozen times.

Poor Tom! the first and bitterest feeling which was like to break his heart was the sense of his own cowardice. The vice of all others⁴ which he loathed was burned in and burned in on his own soul⁵. He

¹ to leaven: durchsäuern (in gutem Sinne), im Anschluß an S. Matth. 13, 33. The kingdom of heaven is like unto leaven, which a woman took, and hid in three measures of meal, till the whole was leavened.

² the tables turned (intransitiv): das Blatt wandte sich, gewöhnlich the tables were turned. Die sprichwörtliche Wendung stammt wahrscheinlich her vom play at tables = game of backgammon.

³ he stole out and said his prayers. Das Knien zur Seite des Bettes beim Gebet ist in England herkömmlich, und in vielen Pensionen wird streng darauf gehalten. S. 190. He dropped on his knees by his bedside.

⁴ The vice of all others: vor allen anderen; stehender Sprachgebrauch.

⁵ burned in on his own soul: brannte hinein bis zur Seele; eigentlich von einem wirklichen Feuer oder von einer Kerze.

had lied to his mother, to his conscience, to his God. How could he bear it? And then the poor little weak boy, whom he had pitied and almost scorned for his weakness, had done that which he, braggart as he was, dared not do. The first dawn of comfort came to him in swearing to himself that he would stand by that boy through thick and thin, and cheer him, and help him, and bear his burdens, for the good deed done that night. Then he resolved to write home next day and tell his mother all, and what a coward her son had been. And then peace came to him as he resolved, lastly, to bear his testimony next morning. The morning would be harder than the night to begin with¹, but he felt that he could not afford to let one chance slip². Several times he faltered, for the devil showed him, first, all his old friends calling him "Saint" and "Square-toes³," and a dozen hard names, and whispered to him that his motives would be misunderstood, and he would only be left alone with the new boy; whereas it was his duty to keep all means of influence, that he might do good to the largest number. And then came the more subtle temptation, "Shall I not be showing myself braver than others by doing this? Have I any right to begin it now? Ought I not rather to pray in my own study, letting other boys know that I do so, and trying to lead them to it, while in public at least I should go on as I have done?" However, his good angel was too strong that night, and he turned on his side and slept, tired

¹ to begin with, wie Christm. Car. p. 9. Die freie und darum etwas ungenaue Anknüpfung gerade dieses Infinitivs, ohne daß with sich auf ein vorhergehendes Substantiv bezieht, ist sehr gewöhnlich.

² he could not afford to let one chance slip: er war nicht in der Lage, d. h. sein Gewissen erlaubte ihm nicht, auch nur eine Gelegenheit unbenuzt entschlüpfen zu lassen I cannot afford it: ich kann es mir nicht leisten, ich kann es nicht erschwingen, meine Mittel erlauben mir's nicht.

³ Square-toes, siehe S. XXXII.

of trying to reason, but resolved to follow the impulse which had been so strong, and in which he had found peace.

Next morning he was up and washed and dressed, all but his jacket and waistcoat, just as the ten minutes' bell¹ began to ring, and then in the face of² the whole room knelt down to pray. Not five words could he say—the bell mocked him; he was listening for every whisper in the room—what were they all thinking of him? He was ashamed to go on kneeling, ashamed to rise from his knees. At last, as it were from his inmost heart, a still small voice seemed to breathe forth the words of the publican³, “God be merciful to me a sinner!” He repeated them over and over, clinging to them as for his life,
 193 and rose from his knees comforted and humbled, and ready to face the whole world. It was not needed: two other boys besides Arthur had already followed his example, and he went down to the great School with a glimmering of another lesson in his heart—the lesson that he who has conquered his own coward spirit has conquered the whole outward world; and that other one which the old prophet learnt in the cave in Mount Horeb, when he hid his face, and the still small voice asked, “What doest thou here, Elijah⁴?” that however we may fancy ourselves alone on the side of good, the King and Lord of men is nowhere without His witnesses; for in every society, however seemingly corrupt and godless, there are those who have not bowed the knee to Baal⁵.

He found too how greatly he had exaggerated

¹ the ten minutes' bell: das Zeichen mit der Glocke 10 Minuten vor der zum Verlassen der Schlafzimmer bestimmten Zeit.

² in the face of the whole room: angeichts der ganzen Klasse.

³ the words of the publican. S. Luke, 18, 13.

⁴ What doest thou here, Elijah? I Kings, 19, 9. Auf der Flucht vor Habel (Jez'ebél) gelangte der Prophet Elia (el'jah) in die Höhle des Berges Horeb, wo das Wort des Herrn zu ihm kam.

⁵ those who have not bowed to Ba'al (fast ba'al), gleich Elia.

the effect to be produced by his act. For a few nights there was a sneer or a laugh when he knelt down, but this passed off soon, and one by one all the other boys but three or four followed the lead. I fear that this was in some measure owing to the fact, that Tom could probably have thrashed any boy in the room except the præpostor; at any rate, every boy knew that he would try upon very slight provocation, and didn't choose to run the risk of a hard fight because Tom Brown had taken a fancy to say his prayers. Some of the small boys of Number 4 communicated the new state of things to their chums, and in several other rooms the poor little fellows tried it on; in one instance or so where the præpostor heard of it and interfered very decidedly, with partial success; but in the rest, after a short struggle, the confessors were bullied or laughed down, and the old state of things went on for some time longer. Before either Tom Brown or Arthur left the School-house, there was no room in which it had not become the regular customs. I trust it is so still, and that the old heathen state of things has gone out for ever.

Chapter II.

The new Boy.

"And Heaven's rich instincts in him grew,
As effortless as woodland nooks
Send violets up and paint them blue."—LOWELL¹.

I do not mean to recount all the little troubles¹⁹⁴ and annoyances which thronged upon Tom at the beginning of this half-year, in his new character of bear-leader² to a gentle little boy straight from home.

¹ Lowell, *Extreme Unction*. And Heaven's rich instincts in me grew, etc.

² bear-leader, wie „Bärenführer“, teils für einen Cicerone ge-
Tom Brown's School Days. II.

He seemed to himself to have become a new boy again, without any of the long-suffering and meekness indispensable for supporting that character with moderate success. From morning till night he had the feeling of responsibility on his mind; and even if he left Arthur in their study or in the close for an hour, was never at ease till he had him in sight again. He waited for him at the doors of the school after every lesson and every calling-over; watched that no tricks were played him, and none but the regulation questions¹ asked; kept his eye on his plate at dinner and breakfast, to see that no unfair depredations were made upon his viands; in short, as East remarked, cackled after him like a hen with one chick.

Arthur took a long time thawing² too, which made it all the harder work; was sadly timid; scarcely ever spoke unless Tom spoke to him first; and, worst of all, would agree with him in everything, the hardest thing in the world for a Brown³ to bear. He got quite angry sometimes, as they sat together of a night⁴ in their study, at this provoking habit of agreement, and was on the point of breaking out a dozen times with a lecture upon the propriety of a fellow having a will of his own and speaking out; but managed to restrain himself by the thought that
 195 it might only frighten Arthur, and the remembrance of the lesson he had learnt from him on his first night at Number 4. Then he would resolve to sit

braucht, teils für einen Hofmeister, insbesondere für einen travelling tutor.

¹ regulation questions, siehe S. 78.

² Arthur took a long time thawing; it took him a long time to thaw: er brauchte lange Zeit um aufzutauen, er taute erst ganz allmählich auf.

³ the hardest thing for a Brown. Vergl. S. 3. Their minds are wonderfully antagonist.

⁴ of a night, sowohl: des Abends (at night), als: eines Abends (one evening).

still, and not say a word till Arthur began; but he was always beat at that game, and had presently to begin talking in despair, fearing lest Arthur might think he was vexed at something if he didn't, and dog-tired¹ of sitting tongue-tied.

It was hard work! But Tom had taken it up, and meant to stick to it, and go through with it, so as to satisfy himself; in which resolution he was much assisted by the chaffing of East and his other old friends, who began to call him "dry-nurse," and otherwise to break their small wit on him². But when they took other ground³, as they did every now and then, Tom was sorely puzzled.

"Tell you what, Tommy," East would say, "you'll spoil young Hopeful⁴ with too much coddling. Why can't you let him go about by himself and find his own level⁵? He'll never be worth a button, if you go on keeping him under your skirts⁶."

"Well, but he ain't fit to fight his own way yet; I'm trying to get him to it every day—but he's very odd. Poor little beggar! I can't make him

¹ dog-tired, nach Analogie von dog-sick (as sick as a sick dog), dog-weary gebildet und als Verstärkung des einfachen tired mit of verbunden: er war es hundemüde.

² to break their small wit on him: sich an ihm zu reiben, ihren Witz an ihm auszulassen (Pfeffer). Die Wendung ist keineswegs gewöhnlich; small wit: Witz im kleinen, Witzeleien, ähnlich wie small talk: leichtes Geplauder.

³ to take other ground: den Angriffsplan ändern (Pfeffer), eigentlich: sich eine andere Position zum Angriff wählen; ähnlich wie to choose, keep, stand, lose, quit one's ground, to dispute the (every inch of) ground, to gain ground, to give ground.

⁴ young Hopeful, siehe S. 160.

⁵ to find his own level: sein richtiges Niveau finden, in das richtige Fahrwasser geraten (Pfeffer). Man sagt sprichwörtlich water always finds its level: jeder findet den Platz, wo er hingehört.

⁶ keeping him under your skirts: ihn unter die Rockschöße, wir sagen gewöhnlich „unter die Flügel," nehmen. Es liegt eine biblische Wendung zu Grunde. Ruth, 3, 9. Spread thy skirt over thine handmaid. Expande pallium tuum super famulam tuam.

out¹ a bit. He ain't a bit like anything I've ever seen or heard of—he seems all over nerves²; anything you say seems to hurt him like a cut or a blow."

"That sort of boy's no use here," said East, "he'll only spoil. Now, I'll tell you what to do, Tommy. Go and get a nice large band-box made, and put him in with plenty of cotton wool³, and a pap-bottle, labelled 'With care—this side up,' and send him back to mamma."

"I think I shall make a hand⁴ of him though," said Tom, smiling, "say what you will. There's something about him, every now and then, which shows me he's got pluck somewhere in him. That's the only thing after all that'll wash⁵, ain't it, old Scud? But how to get at it and bring it out⁶?"

196 Tom took one hand out of his breeches-pocket and stuck it in his back hair for a scratch, giving his hat a tilt over his nose⁷, his one method⁸ of invoking wisdom. He stared at the ground with a ludicrously puzzled look, and presently looked up and met East's eyes. That young gentleman slapped him on the back, and then put his arm round his shoulder, as they strolled through the quadrangle

¹ I can't make him out: ich kann ihn nicht verstehen, mich nicht in ihn finden.

² he seems all over nerves; he seems nothing but nerves: er scheint nur aus Nerven zu bestehen, he seems to have no flesh and blood. Vergleichen läßt sich das provinzielle all-overish, feeling all over alike and touching nowhere.

³ cotton wool: Watte. Pap-bottle: Saugflasche. With care: Vorsicht! This side up: oben; übrige Vorschrift bei Paketen mit zerbrechlichem Inhalt.

⁴ a hand: einen tüchtigen Kerl. Vergl. S. 114: cool hands.

⁵ that'll wash: waschecht. It won't wash, i. e. will not stand investigation, will not "bear the rub," is not genuine, can't be believed. Slang Dict.

⁶ to bring out: zur Entfaltung bringen (Thiem), von einem Heim.

⁷ giving his hat a tilt over his nose: indem er den Hut über die Nase kippte.

⁸ his one method; his invariable method,

together. "Tom," said he, "blest if¹ you ain't the best old fellow ever was—I do like to see you go into a thing. Hang it, I wish I could take things as you do—but I never can get higher than a joke. Everything's a joke. If I was going to be flogged next minute, I should be in a blue funk², but I couldn't help laughing at it for the life of me."

"Brown and East, you go and fag for Jones on the great fives'-court."

"Hullo, though, that's past a joke³," broke out East, springing at the young gentleman who addressed them, and catching him by the collar. "Here, Tommy, catch hold of him t'other side before he can holla."

The youth was seized, and dragged struggling out of the quadrangle into the School-house hall. He was one of the miserable little pretty white-handed curly-headed boys, petted and pampered by some of the big fellows, who wrote their verses for them, taught them to drink and use bad language, and did all they could to spoil them for everything* in this world and the next. One of the avocations in which these young gentlemen took particular delight, was in⁴ going about and getting fags for their protectors, when those heroes were playing any game. They carried about pencil and paper with them, putting down the names of all the boys they sent, always sending five times as many as were wanted, and

* A kind and wise critic, an old Rugbœan, notes here in the margin: The "small friend system was not so utterly bad from 1841—1847." Before that, too, there were many noble friendships between big and little boys, but I can't strike out the passage: many boys will know why it is left in. Es wird angedeutet, daß auch wirklich schlimme Dinge vorkamen.

¹ blest, besonders mit folgendem if, Euphemismus für cursed.

² in a blue funk. Blue, confounded, slang. Funk, siehe S. III und XXVII.

³ that's past a joke: das geht über den Spaß. Pfeffer.

⁴ was in going about; es sollte heißen was going about.

getting all those thrashed who didn't go. The present youth belonged to a house¹ which was very jealous of the School-house, and always picked out School-house fags when he could find them. However, this time he'd got the wrong sow by the ear². His captors slammed the great door of the hall, and East put his back against it, while Tom gave the prisoner a shake-up³, took away his list, and stood him up⁴ on the floor, while he proceeded leisurely to examine that document.

"Let me out, let me go!" screamed the boy in a furious passion. "I'll go and tell Jones this minute, and he'll give you both the — thrashing you ever had."

"Pretty little dear," said East, patting the top of his hat; "hark how he swears, Tom. Nicely brought-up young man, ain't he, I don't think."

"Let me alone, — you," roared the boy, foaming with rage, and kicking at East, who quietly tripped him up, and deposited him on the floor in a place of safety.

"Gently, young fellow," said he; "'taint improving for little whippersnappers⁵ like you to be indulging in blasphemy; so you stop that, or you'll get something you won't like."

"I'll have you both licked when I get out, that I will," rejoined the boy, beginning to snivel.

"Two can play at that game⁶, mind you," said

¹ a house: ein Pensionat unter Leitung eines Lehrers. Vergl. S. 178.

² to get (to take) the wrong sow by the ear: sich vergreifen, an den unrechten Mann kommen.

³ gave the prisoner a shake-up: schüttelte ihn zusammen.

⁴ stood him up: stellte ihn aufrecht hin; ein in der gewöhnlichen Sprache häufiger, wenigstens inforrekter Gebrauch des Verbums.

⁵ whippersnapper: kleiner Knirps; dies ist die gewöhnliche Bedeutung des Wortes. Halliw., an insignificant person, a term of contempt. Slang Dict., a waspish, diminutive person.

⁶ Two can play at that game (at that): dazu gehören zwei,

Tom, who had finished his examination of the list. "Now you just listen here. We've just come across the fives'-court, and Jones has four fags there already, two more than he wants. If he'd wanted us to change¹, he'd have stopped us himself. And here, you little blackguard, you've got seven names down on your list besides ours, and five of them School-house²." Tom walked up to him and jerked him on to his legs³; he was by this time whining like a whipped puppy.

"Now just listen to me. We ain't going to fag 198 for Jones. If you tell him you've sent us, we'll each of us give you such a thrashing as you'll remember." And Tom tore up the list and threw the pieces into the fire.

"And mind you too," said East, "don't let me catch you again sneaking about the School-house, and picking up our fags. You haven't got the sort of hide to take a sound licking kindly⁴;" and he opened the door and sent the young gentleman flying into the quadrangle, with a parting kick.

"Nice boy, Tommy," said East, shoving his hands in his pockets and strolling to the fire.

"Worst sort we breed," responded Tom, following his example. "Thank goodness⁵, no big fellow ever took to petting me."

dazu müssen zwei sein, ich bin auch noch dabei. Es kann darin eine Drohung liegen, doch ist dies nicht notwendig der Fall.

¹ If he had wanted us to change: wenn er verlangt hätte, wir sollten die anderen ablösen.

² School-house = being of (belonging to) the School-house.

³ jerked him on to his legs: schuppte ihn weiter, bis er auf die Beine kam.

⁴ to take a sound licking kindly: du hast nicht das Fell dazu, um eine tüchtige Tracht Prügel leicht auszuhalten. Sonst sagt man, to take kindly to something: sich leicht an etwas gewöhnen. Sher. Riv. I, 1. Does she draw kindly with the captain? Ausdruck eines Aufschers.

⁵ Thank goodness: dem Himmel sei Dank. Ähnliche Interjektionen sind my goodness, goodness me, goodness gracious.

"You'd never have been like that," said East. "I should like to have him put¹ in a museum:—Christian young gentleman², nineteenth century, highly educated. Stir him up with a long pole, Jack, and hear him swear like a drunken sailor!—He'd make a respectable public open its eyes, I think."

"Think he'll tell Jones?" said Tom.

"No," said East. "Don't care if he does."

"Nor I," said Tom. And they went back to talk about Arthur.

The young gentleman had brains enough not to tell Jones, reasoning that East and Brown, who were noted as some of the toughest fags in the school, wouldn't care three straws³ for any licking Jones might give them, and would be likely to keep their words as to passing it on with interest.

After the above conversation, East came a good deal to their study, and took notice of Arthur; and soon allowed to Tom that he was a thorough little gentleman, and would get over his shyness all in
 199 good time; which much comforted our hero. He felt every day, too, the value of having an object in his life, something that drew him out of himself; and, it being the dull time of the year⁴, and no games going about which he much cared, was happier than he had ever yet been at school, which was saying a great deal.

The time which Tom allowed himself away from his charge, was from locking-up till supper-time. During this hour or hour-and-half he used to take

¹ to have put him der londoner Ausgabe ist wohl nur ein Versehen. ² Christian young gentleman. Indem der Verfasser von einem Museum zu einer Menagerie überspringt, läßt er den Wörter sprechen. Stir him up, vom Aufreizen der wilden Tiere aus dem Schlaf.

³ wouldn't care three straws for (gewöhnlich a straw, wie S. 63), would care nothing for: sie würden sich nichts daraus machen; sowohl Bezeichnung der Gleichgültigkeit als der Verachtung.

⁴ the dull time of the year, the silly season: die Sauregurtenzeit.

his fling¹, going round to the studies of all his acquaintance, sparring or gossiping in the hall, now jumping the old iron-bound tables, or carving a bit of his name on them, then joining in some chorus of merry voices; in fact, blowing off his steam², as we should now call it.

This process was so congenial to his temper, and Arthur showed himself so pleased at the arrangement, that it was several weeks before Tom was ever in their study before supper. One evening, however, he rushed in to look for an old chisel, or some corks, or other articles essential to his pursuit for the time being, and while rummaging about in the cupboards, looked up for a moment, and was caught at once by the figure of poor little Arthur. The boy was sitting with his elbows on the table, and his head leaning on his hands, and before him an open book, on which his tears were falling fast. Tom shut the door at once, and sat down on the sofa by Arthur, putting his arm round his neck.

"Why, young un! what's the matter?" said he, kindly; "you ain't unhappy, are you?"

"Oh no, Brown," said the little boy, looking up with the great tears in his eyes, "you are so kind to me, I'm very happy."

"Why don't you call me Tom? lots of boys do that I don't like half so much as you. What are you reading, then? Hang it, you must come about with me, and not mope yourself³," and Tom cast 200 down his eyes on the book, and saw it was the Bible. He was silent for a minute, and thought to

¹ to take his fling (to have his fling): ausſchlagen und austoben, Sätze und Sprünge machen, ſich in ausgelassener Laune gehen lassen; let him have (give him) his fling: laß ihm die Bügel schießen.

² to blow the steam off (to blow off the steam), ſiehe S. 5 und S. 160.

³ to mope one's self: ſich trüueriſch in eine trübe Stimmung verſetzen, ſich verſimpeln.

himself, "Lesson Number 2, Tom Brown;"—and then said gently—

"I'm very glad to see this, Arthur, and ashamed that I don't read the Bible more myself. Do you read it every night before supper while I'm out?"

"Yes."

"Well, I wish you'd wait till afterwards, and then we'd read together. But, Arthur, why does it make you cry?"

"Oh, it isn't that I'm unhappy. But at home, while my father was alive, we always read the lessons¹ after tea; and I love to read them over now, and try to remember what he said about them. I can't remember all, and I think I scarcely understand a great deal of what I do remember. But it all comes back to me so fresh, that I can't help crying sometimes to think I shall never read them again with him."

Arthur had never spoken of his home before, and Tom hadn't encouraged him to do so, as his blundering school-boy reasoning made him think that Arthur would be softened and less manly for thinking of home. But now he was fairly interested, and forgot all about chisels and bottled beer; while with very little encouragement Arthur launched² into his home history, and the prayer-bell put them both out sadly when it rang to call them to the hall.

From this time Arthur constantly spoke of his home, and above all, of his father, who had been dead about a year, and whose memory Tom soon got to love and reverence almost as much as his own son did.

¹ the lessons: die, wie unsere Perikopen für Sonntage, so für alle einzelnen Tage des Jahres zum Lesen oder Vorlesen bestimmten Bibelabschnitte.

² to launch (out) into a subject: sich über ein Thema auslassen (verbreiten); eigentlich: sich auf etwas einlassen, entlehnt vom Schiff, das vom Stapel läuft und in die See geht.

Arthur's father had been the clergyman of a parish in the Midland Counties¹, which had risen into a large town during the war, and upon which the hard years which followed had fallen with a fearful weight. The trade had been half ruined: and then came the old sad story, of masters reducing their establishments, men turned off and wandering 201 about, hungry and wan in body and fierce in soul, from the thought of wives and children starving at home, and the last sticks² of furniture going to the pawn-shop. Children taken from school, and lounging about the dirty streets and courts, too listless almost to play, and squalid in rags and misery. And then the fearful struggle between the employers and men; lowerings of wages, strikes, and the long course of oft-repeated crime, ending every now and then with a riot, a fire, and the county yeomanry³. There is no need here to dwell upon such tales; the Englishman into whose soul they have not sunk deep is not worthy the name; you English boys for whom this book is meant (God bless your bright faces and kind hearts!) will learn it all soon enough.

Into such a parish and state of society, Arthur's father had been thrown at the age of twenty-five, a young married parson, full of faith, hope, and love. He had battled with it like a man, and had lots of

¹ the Midland Counties. England mit Ausschluß von Wales wird in 40 Grafschaften (counties, shires) geteilt, die wieder in gesonderte Gruppen zerfallen. Zieht man eine Linie von der Mündung des Mersey bis zu der des Humber, so liegen nördlich die sechs northern counties. Von den südlich davon gelegenen sondert man westlich die vier an Wales grenzenden Grafschaften ab, während östlich vier eastern counties sich am Meere von der Mündung des Humber bis zu der Themse erstrecken. Die sechs southern counties liegen am Kanal. Es bleiben im Innern zwanzig Grafschaften übrig, die man zu je zehn als north midland-counties und south midland-counties bezeichnet.

² sticks im slang für furniture, household chattels.

³ the yeomanry, siehe S. 16. Da militia und yeomanry den Dienst im Innern des Landes besorgen, so werden sie gelegentlich bei Unruhen aufgeboten.

fine Utopian ideas¹ about the perfectibility of mankind, glorious humanity and such-like, knocked out of his head; and a real wholesome Christian love for the poor struggling, sinning men, of whom he felt himself one, and with and for whom he spent fortune, and strength, and life, driven into his heart. He had battled like a man, and gotten² a man's reward. No silver teapots or salvers, with flowery inscriptions, setting forth his virtues and the appreciation of a genteel parish; no fat living or stall³, for which he never looked, and didn't care; no sighs and praises of comfortable dowagers and well got-up⁴ young women, who worked him slippers, sugared his tea, and adored him as "a devoted man⁵;" but a manly respect, wrung from the unwilling souls of men who fancied his order their natural enemies; the fear and hatred of every one who was false or unjust in the district, were he master or man; and the blessed sight
202 of women and children daily becoming more human and more homely, a comfort to themselves and to their husbands and fathers.

¹ Utopian (ūtō'pīān) ideas. Sir Thomas More (Thomas Morus), 1478 (1480?)—1535, Kanzler unter Heinrich VIII., der ihn hinarichten ließ, war Verfasser eines Werkes, das zuerst 1516 in Löwen erschien, de optimo reipublicae statu deque nova insula Utopia (über den besten Zustand des Staates und über die neue Insel Utopia). Der aus dem Griechischen (οὐ, τόπος) gebildete Name, von ihm selbst latinisiert Nusquama (Nirgendshheim) und englisch wiedergegeben Nowhere, bezeichnet ein ideales Land der Vollkommenheit, dessen Bild in phantastischer Weise entworfen wird. Das Werk, das vorzugsweise socialistische Fragen behandelt, hat die Bezeichnung des nur Ideellen, der Wirklichkeit nicht Entsprechenden als Utopian, utopisch, veranlaßt.

² gotten, gewöhnlich als attributives Adjektiv gebraucht (ill gotten goods seldom prosper), doch nicht selten als wirkliches Participle in schwungvoller Rede.

³ stall: Chorstuhl in einer Kathedrale für geistliche Würdenträger, daher Stifths herrnstelle.

⁴ got-up: herausgeputzt, aufgedonnert, von den Dekorationen eines Theaterstückes hergenommen. Vergl. S. 87: the get-up.

⁵ a "devoted man": ein Gott ergebener, gottfälliger Mann, durch Anführungszeichen als Ausdruck des frommen cant gekennzeichnet.

These things of course took time, and had to be fought for with toil and sweat of brain and heart, and with the life-blood poured out. All that, Arthur had laid his account¹ to give, and took as a matter of course neither pitying himself, or looking on himself as a martyr, when he felt the wear and tear² making him feel old before his time, and the stifling air of fever dens telling on³ his health. His wife seconded him in everything. She had been rather fond of society, and much admired and run after before her marriage; and the London world, to which she had belonged, pitied poor Fanny Evelyn when she married the young clergyman and went to settle in that smoky hole Turley⁴, a very nest of Chartism⁵ and Atheism, in a part of the county which all the decent families had had to leave for years. However, somehow or other she didn't seem to care. If her husband's living had been amongst green fields and near pleasant neighbours, she would have liked it better, that she never pretended to deny. But there they were: the air wasn't bad after all; the people were very good sort of people, civil to you if you

¹ to lay one's account: seine Rechnung anlegen, daher sich auf etwas gefaßt machen.

² wear and tear: Aufreibung, von Abnutzung der Kleider auf Mitnahme der Konstitution, der Körper- und Geisteskräfte übertragen.

³ to tell, siehe S. 91. Oft mit on verbunden, z. B. S. 202, 212.

⁴ Turley, wohl ein fingierter Name, vielleicht gebildet mit Benutzung von turlins, einer Art Kohle in Northumberland.

⁵ Chartism. Das 1838 aufgestellte Programm der demokratischen Partei (the People's Charter) umfaßte 6 Punkte, 1. allgemeines Wahlrecht aller unbescholtenen Staatsbürger vom Alter von 21 Jahren an, 2. gleichmäßige Einteilung des Landes in 300 Wahlbezirke, 3. geheime Stimmabgabe, 4. jährliche Parlamentswahl, 5. Fortfall aller besonderen Bedingungen (des Censuss) für das passive Wahlrecht, 6. Anweisung von Diktien (jährlich 500 £) für die Abgeordneten. Es schieden sich zwei Parteien der Chartisten, the Physical Force Chartists und the Moral Force Chartists; die ersteren hegten größtenteils socialistische Bestrebungen und forberten a fair day's wages for a fair day's work,

were civil to them, after the first brush¹; and they didn't expect to work miracles, and convert them all off-hand into model Christians. So he and she went quietly among the folk, talking to and treating them just as they would have done people of their own rank. They didn't feel that they were doing anything out of the common way, and so were perfectly natural, and had none of that condescension or consciousness of manner which so outrages the independent poor. And thus they gradually won respect and confidence; and after sixteen years he was looked up to by the whole neighbourhood as *the* just man, *the* man to whom masters and men could go in their strikes, and all in their quarrels and difficulties, and by whom the right and true word
 203 would be said without fear or favour. And the women had come round to take her advice, and go to her as a friend in all their troubles; while the children all worshipped the very ground she trod on.

They had three children, two daughters and a son, little Arthur, who came between his sisters. He had been a very delicate boy from his childhood; they thought he had a tendency² to consumption, and so he had been kept at home and taught by his father, who had made a companion of him, and from whom he had gained good scholarship, and a knowledge of and interest in many subjects which boys in general never come across till they are many years older.

Just as he reached his thirteenth year, and his father had settled that he was strong enough to go to school, and, after much debating with himself, had resolved to send him there, a desperate typhus-fever broke out in the town; most of the other clergy,

¹ after the first brush: nach dem ersten Zusammentreffen; entlehnt vom Zusammenstoß mit einem Feinde.

² tendency (statt disposition): Anlage; wohl nur um den Gleichhang der Endung mit consumption zu vermeiden.

and almost all the doctors, ran away; the work fell with tenfold weight on those who stood to their work. Arthur and his wife both caught the fever, of which he died in a few days, and she recovered, having been able to nurse him to the end, and store up his last words. He was sensible to the last, and calm and happy, leaving his wife and children with fearless trust for a few years in the hands of the Lord and Friend who had lived and died for him, and for whom he, to the best of his power, had lived and died. His widow's mourning was deep and gentle; she was more affected by the request of the Committee of a Freethinking Club¹, established in the town by some of the factory hands², (which he had striven against with might and main, and nearly suppressed,) that some of their number might be allowed to help bear the coffin, than by anything else. Two of them were chosen, who with six other labouring men, his own fellow-workmen and friends, bore him to his grave—a man who had fought the Lord's fight even unto the death³. The shops were 204 closed and the factories shut that day in the parish, yet no master stopped the day's wages; but for many a year afterwards the townsfolk felt the want of that brave, hopeful, loving parson, and his wife, who had lived to teach them mutual forbearance and helpfulness, and had *almost* at last given them a glimpse of what this old world would be if people would live for God and each other, instead of for themselves.

What has all this to do with our story? Well, my dear boys, let a fellow go on his own way, or you won't get anything out of him worth having. I must show you what sort of a man it was who had

¹ a Freethinking Club: ein Klub von Freidenkern. Freethinkers heißen alle, die nicht an göttliche Offenbarung glauben.

² factory hands: Fabrikarbeiter.

³ even unto the death. Phil. 2, 8. He humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

begotten and trained little Arthur, or else you won't believe in him, which I am resolved you shall do; and you won't see how he, the timid weak boy, had points¹ in him from which the bravest and strongest recoiled, and made his presence and example felt from the first on all sides, unconsciously to himself, and without the least attempt at proselytizing. The spirit of his father was in him, and the Friend to whom his father had left him did not neglect the trust.

After supper that night, and almost nightly for years afterwards, Tom and Arthur, and by degrees East occasionally, and sometimes one, sometimes another, of their friends, read a chapter of the Bible together, and talked it over afterwards. Tom was at first utterly astonished, and almost shocked, at the sort of way in which Arthur read the book, and talked about the men and women whose lives were there told. The first night they happened to fall on the chapters about the famine in Egypt², and Arthur began talking about Joseph as if he were a living statesman; just as he might have talked about Lord Grey and the Reform Bill³; only that they were much more living realities to him. The book was to him, Tom saw, the most vivid and delightful history of real people, who might do right or wrong, just
 205 like any one who was walking about in Rugby—the Doctor, or the masters, or the sixth-form boys.

¹ points: hervortretende Charakterzüge.

² the famine in Egypt. Gen. 41, 53 ff.

³ Lord Grey and the Reform Bill. Charles Earl of Grey, 1764—1845, wurde bald nach der Thronbesteigung Wilhelms IV. (1830—1837) Premierminister und ließ als solcher 1831 durch Lord John Russell die (First) Reform Bill einbringen, welcher Gesetzesvorschlag 56 Wahlsiedeln ohne wirkliche Wählerchaft (rotten boroughs) die Vertretung im Parlamente nahm, dagegen Grafschaften und Städte 143 Vertreter zulegte und das Wahlrecht bedeutend ausdehnte. Nach heftigem Widerstand von seiten des Oberhauses ging die Reformbill am 7. Juni 1832 durch und wurde Staatsgesetz.

But the astonishment soon passed off, the scales¹ seemed to drop from his eyes, and the book became at once and for ever to him the great human and divine book, and the men and women, whom he had looked upon as something quite different from himself, became his friends and counsellors.

For our purposes, however, the history of one night's reading will be sufficient, which must be told here, now we are on the subject, though it didn't happen till a year afterwards, and long after the events recorded in the next chapter of our story.

Arthur, Tom, and East were together one night, and read the story of Naaman² coming to Elisha to be cured of his leprosy. When the chapter was finished, Tom shut his Bible with a slap.

"I can't stand that fellow Naaman," said he, "after what he'd seen and felt, going back and bowing himself down in the house of Rimmon, because his effeminate scoundrel of a master did it. I wonder Elisha took the trouble to heal him. How he must have despised him."

"Yes, there you go off as usual, with a shell on your head³," struck in East, who always took the opposite side to Tom; half from love of argument,

¹ the scales. Acts, 9, 18. And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales.

² Nā'amān. II Kings, 5. Naaman, der Feldhauptmann des Königs von Syrien, war ausserfähig und wurde von dem Propheten Elisa durch siebenmaliges Waschen im Jordan geheilt. Die Worte Toms beziehen sich auf sein Versprechen, v. 18. In this thing the Lord pardon thy servant, that when my master goeth into the house of Rimmon to worship there, and he leaneth on my hand, and I bow myself in the house of Rimmon: when I bow myself in the house of Rimmon, the Lord pardon thy servant in this thing. Der Gott Rimmōn (Rim'mōn), der einen Tempel in Damascus hatte, scheint eine Personifikation der fruchtbaren Natur gewesen zu sein, indem sein Name nach einigen einen Granatapfel bedeutet, während Gesenius denselben erklärt: Deus summus.

³ with a shell on your head: noch mit der Eierschale auf dem Kopfe.

half from conviction. "How do you know he didn't think better of it? how do you know his master was a scoundrel? His letter don't look like it, and the book don't say so."

"I don't care," rejoined Tom; "why did Naaman talk about bowing down, then, if he didn't mean to do it? He wasn't likely to get more in earnest when he got back to court, and away from the prophet."

"Well but, Tom," said Arthur, "look what Elisha says to him, 'Go in peace.' He wouldn't have said that if Naaman had been in the wrong."

206 "I don't see that that means more than saying, 'You're not the man I took you for.'"

"No, no, that won't do at all," said East; "read the words fairly, and take men as you find them. I like Naaman, and think he was a very fine fellow."

"I don't," said Tom, positively.

"Well, I think East is right," said Arthur; "I can't see but what it's right to do the best you can, though it mayn't be the best absolutely. Every man isn't born to be a martyr."

"Of course, of course," said East; "but he's on one of his pet hobbies. How often have I told you, Tom, that you must drive a nail where it'll go¹."

"And how often have I told you," rejoined Tom, "that it'll always go where you want, if you only stick to it and hit hard enough. I hate half measures and compromises."

"Yes, he's a whole-hog man², is Tom³. Must have

¹ drive a nail where it will go: *(schlage den Nagel in die richtige Fuge; gewöhnlicher drive the nail that will go. Ebenso S. 302.*

² a whole-hog man: ein Mann von durchgreifenden (radikalen) Maßregeln. To go the whole hog = to go all lengths (not sticking at trifles, not doing things by halves), to go through thick and thin (through fire and water). Statt dieser Wendung, die zurückzuführen ist auf the whole hog or none, sagt man scherzhaft to go the entire animal, to go the complete swine.

³ is Tom: dieser Tom; eine der familiären Sprache angehörige Wendung, statt deren auch stehen könnte Tom is,

the whole animal, hair and teeth, claws and tail," laughed East. "Sooner have no bread any day than half the loaf¹."

"I don't know," said Arthur, "it's rather puzzling; but ain't most right things got by proper compromises, I mean where the principle isn't given up?"

"That's just the point," said Tom; "I don't object to a compromise where you don't give up your principle."

"Not you," said East, laughingly. "I know him of old, Arthur, and you'll find him out some day. There isn't such a reasonable fellow in the world, to hear him talk. He never wants anything but what's right and fair; only when you come to settle what's right and fair, it's everything that he wants, and nothing that you want. And that's his idea of a compromise. Give me the Brown compromise when I'm on his side."

"Now, Harry," said Tom, "no more chaff—I'm serious. Look here—this is what makes my blood tingle²;" and he turned over the pages of his Bible ²⁰⁷ and read, "Shadrach³, Meshach, and Abednego answered and said to the king, 'O Nebuchadnezzar, we are not careful to answer thee in this matter. If it *be* so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and He will deliver us out of thine hand, O king. But *if not*, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will *not* serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast

¹ Sooner have no bread, etc. Das Sprichwort lautet gewöhnlich half a loaf is better than no bread: besser etwas als gar nichts.

² this is what makes my blood tingle: gerade dies bringt mein Blut in Wallung. To tingle, schwächere Nebenform von to tinkle, wird nicht bloß vom Klingen der Ohren (my ears tingle), sondern auch von einem Gefühl der Nerven gebraucht, das den Körper durchdringt (the pain tingles up to my fingers). My blood tingles = my blood is up.

³ Shadrach (shā'drāk), Meshach (mē'shāk), and Abednego (ābēd'nēgō). Dan. 3, 16 ff. Nebuchadnezzar (nēbukādnēz'zār).

set up.'” He read the last verse twice, emphasizing the notes, and dwelling on them as if they gave him actual pleasure, and were hard to part with.

They were silent a minute, and then Arthur said, “Yes, that’s a glorious story, but it don’t prove your point, Tom, I think. There are times when there is only one way, and that the highest, and then the men are found to stand in the breach.”

“There’s always a highest way, and it’s always the right one,” said Tom. “How many times has the Doctor told us that in his sermons in the last year, I should like to know?”

“Well, you ain’t going to convince us, is he, Arthur? No Brown compromise to-night,” said East, looking at his watch. “But it’s past eight, and we must go to first lesson¹. What a bore!”

So they took down their books and fell to work; but Arthur didn’t forget, and thought long and often over the conversation.

Chapter III.

Arthur makes a Friend.

“Let Nature be your teacher:
Sweet is the lore which Nature brings;
Our meddling intellect
Mis-shapes the beauteous forms of things.
We murder to dissect—
Enough of Science and of Art;
Close up those barren leaves;
Come forth, and bring with you a heart
That watches and receives.”—WORDSWORTH².

208 About six weeks after the beginning of the half, as Tom and Arthur were sitting one night before supper beginning their verses, Arthur suddenly

¹ go to first lesson: an die (Vorbereitung auf die) erste Lektion gehen.

² Wordsworth, *The Tables Turned*. Poems of Sentiment and Reflection.

stopped, and looked up, and said, "Tom, do you know anything of Martin?"

"Yes," said Tom, taking his hand out of his back hair, and delighted to throw his *Gradus ad Parnasum*¹ on to the sofa; "I know him pretty well. He's a very good fellow, but as mad as a hatter². He's called Madman, you know. And never was such a fellow for³ getting all sorts of rum things about him. He tamed two snakes last half, and used to carry them about in his pocket, and I'll be bound⁴ he's got some hedgehogs and rats in his cupboard now, and no one knows what besides."

"I should like very much to know him," said Arthur; "he was next to me in the form to-day, and he'd lost his book and looked over mine, and he seemed so kind and gentle, that I liked him very much."

"Ah, poor old Madman, he's always losing his books," said Tom, "and getting called up and floored⁵ because he hasn't got them."

"I like him all the better," said Arthur.

"Well, he's great fun, I can tell you," said Tom,

¹ *Grādūs Ad Parnās'sūm* (das erste a wie in far): Stufe zum Parnas, heißt in England wie bei uns, da der Parnas dem Apollo und den Mufen geweiht war, ein Hülfswörterbuch zur Anfertigung lateinischer oder griechischer Verse, das außer Angabe der Quantität (Länge und Kürze der Silben) für jedes Wort sinneverwandte Ausdrücke, zum Schmuck dienende Adjektive und poetische Wendungen darbietet.

² as mad as a hatter: fuchstoll. Sonst sagt man, wie S. 236, as mad as a march-hare.

³ such a fellow for, siehe S. 3.

⁴ I'll be bound, siehe S. 182.

⁵ to be floored: im Ringen zu Boden gestreckt, beim Boxen zu Boden geschlagen werden, dann in einer Debatte aus dem Felde geschlagen und zum Schweigen gebracht werden, in der Klasse den letzten Platz erhalten, bei Schulleistungen oder im Examen abfallen (abstürzen), überhaupt im Verhältnis zu anderen schlecht wegkommen, gesaßt werden. In derselben Verbindung mit to be called up: vom Lehrer aufgerufen werden, S. 224: You'll be called up and floored when master sees what state you're in. Vergl. S. 225 u. 278.

209 throwing himself back on the sofa, and chuckling at the remembrance. "We had such a game with him one day last half. He had been kicking up¹ horrid stinks for some time in his study, till I suppose some fellow told Mary, and she told the Doctor. Anyhow, one day a little before dinner, when he came down from the library, the Doctor, instead of going home, came striding into the Hall. East and I and five or six other fellows were at the fire, and precious we stared, for he don't come in like that once a-year, unless it is a wet day and there's a fight in the Hall. 'East,' says he, 'just come and show me Martin's study.' 'Oh, here's a game,' whispered the rest of us, and we all cut upstairs after the Doctor, East leading. As we got into the New Row², which was hardly wide enough to hold the Doctor and his gown, click, click, click we heard in the old Madman's den. Then that stopped all of a sudden, and the bolts went to like fun: the Madman knew East's step, and thought there was going to be a siege.

"'It's the Doctor, Martin. He's here and wants to see you,' sings out East.

"Then the bolts went back slowly, and the door opened, and there was the old Madman standing, looking precious scared; his jacket off, his shirt-sleeves up to his elbows, and his long skinny arms all covered with anchors and arrows and letters, tattooed in with gunpowder like a sailor-boy's, and a stink fit to knock you down coming out. 'Twas all the Doctor could do³ to stand his ground, and East and I, who were looking in under his arms, held our noses tight. The old magpie was standing

¹ kicking up a stink, nach Analogie von kicking up a dust und kicking up a row, a shindy (slang); stink, unehler Ausdrucl für stench, smell.

² row (sonst besonders a row of houses, a row of rooms) für passage: Korridor. S. 211: the Sick-room row.

³ 'Twas all the Doctor could do, siehe S. 171.

on the window-sill, all his feathers drooping, and looking disgusted and half-poisoned.

"What can you be about, Martin?" says the Doctor; 'you really mustn't go on in this way—you're a nuisance¹ to the whole passage.'

"Please, Sir, I was only mixing up this powder, ²¹⁰ there isn't any harm in it;' and the Madman seized nervously on his pestle and mortar, to show the Doctor the harmlessness of his pursuits, and went off pounding; click, click, click; he hadn't given six clicks before, puff! up went the whole into a great blaze, away went the pestle and mortar across the study, and back we tumbled into the passage. The magpie fluttered down into the court, swearing², and the Madman danced out, howling, with his fingers in his mouth. The Doctor caught hold of him, and called to us to fetch some water. 'There, you silly fellow,' said he, quite pleased though to find he wasn't much hurt, 'you see you don't know the least what you're doing with all these things; and now, mind, you must give up practising chemistry by yourself.' Then he took hold of his arm and looked at it, and I saw he had to bite his lip, and his eyes twinkled; but he said, quite grave, 'Here, you see, you've been making all these foolish marks on yourself, which you can never get out, and you'll be very sorry for it in a year or two: now come down to the housekeeper's room, and let us see if you are hurt.' And away went the two, and we all stayed and had a regular turn-out³ of the den, till Martin came back with his hand bandaged and turned us out. However, I'll

¹ nuisance, siehe S. 40.

² swearing: freischend; sonst vom Jauchen (spitting) einer Raze.

³ a regular turn-out: ein gehöriges Umdumkehren, entsprechend den Ausdrücken to turn out casks: Fässer stürzen und leeren, to turn out the loading: umladen (aus einem Schiff in ein anderes), benutzt zu einem Wortspiel mit till Martin turned us out: wir schmissen alles in dem Boche um und um, bis Martin uns herausdrückte.

go and see what he's after, and tell him to come in after prayers to supper." And away went Tom to find the boy in question, who dwelt in a little study by himself, in New Row.

The aforesaid Martin, whom Arthur had taken such a fancy for, was one of those unfortunates who were at that time of day (and are, I fear, still) quite out of their places at a public school. If we knew how to use our boys, Martin would have been seized upon and educated as a natural philosopher. He had a passion for birds, beasts, and insects, and knew more of them and their habits than any one in Rugby; 211 except perhaps the Doctor, who knew everything¹. He was also an experimental chemist on a small scale², and had made unto himself an electric machine, from which it was his greatest pleasure and glory to administer small shocks to any small boys who were rash enough to venture into his study. And this was by no means an adventure free from excitement; for, besides the probability of a snake dropping on to your head or twining lovingly up your leg, or a rat getting into your breeches-pocket in search of food, there was the animal and chemical odour to be faced, which always hung about the den, and the chance of being blown up in some of the many experiments which Martin was always trying, with the most wondrous results in the shape of explosions and smells that mortal boy ever heard of. Of course, poor Martin, in consequence of his pursuits, had become an Ishmaelite in the house. In the first place, he half-poisoned all his neighbours, and they in turn were always on the look-out to pounce upon³

¹ the Doctor, who knew everything, nach der Ansicht der Schüler. In Wirklichkeit war Arnold kein Polyhistor.

² on a small scale: im kleinen, in Miniatur.

³ to pounce upon: herfallen über; vom Herabstürzen eines Raubvogels hergenommen.

any of his numerous live-stock¹, and drive him frantic² by enticing his pet old magpie out of his window into a neighbouring study, and making the disreputable old bird drunk on toast soaked in beer and sugar. Then Martin, for his sins, inhabited a study looking into a small court some ten feet across, the window of which was completely commanded by those of the studies opposite in the Sick-room Row, these latter being at a slightly higher elevation. East, and another boy of an equally tormenting and ingenious turn of mind, now lived exactly opposite, and had expended huge pains and time in the preparation of instruments of annoyance for the behoof of Martin and his live colony. One morning an old basket made its appearance, suspended by a short cord outside Martin's window, in which were deposited an amateur nest³ containing four young hungry jackdaws, the pride and glory of Martin's life for the time being, and which he was currently asserted to ²¹² have hatched upon his own person. Early in the morning, and late at night he was to be seen half out of window, administering to the varied wants of his callow brood. After deep cogitation, East and his chum had spliced a knife on to the end of a fishing-rod; and having watched Martin out, had, after half-an-hour's severe sawing, cut the string by which the basket was suspended, and tumbled it on to the pavement below, with hideous remonstrance from the occupants. Poor Martin, returning from his short absence, collected the fragments and replaced his brood (except one whose neck had been broken in the descent) in their old location, suspending them this time by string and wire twisted together, defiant of any sharp instrument which his

¹ live-stock: lebendes Inventar; gleich darauf his live colony.

² to drive frantic: zum tollsten Wahnsinn treiben; stärker als das gewöhnliche to drive mad.

³ an amateur nest: ein dilettantisches, d. h. künstliches Nest.

persecutors could command. But, like the Russian engineers at Sebastopol¹, East and his chum had an answer for every move of the adversary; and the next day had mounted a gun in the shape of a pea-shooter upon the ledge of their window, trained so as to bear exactly upon the spot which Martin had to occupy while tending his nurselings. The moment he began to feed, they began to shoot; in vain did the enemy himself invest² in a pea-shooter, and endeavour to answer the fire while he fed the young birds with his other hand; his attention was divided, and his shots flew wild, while every one of theirs told on³ his face and hands, and drove him into howlings and imprecations. He had been driven to ensconce the nest in a corner of his already too well-filled den.

His door was barricaded by a set of ingenious bolts of his own invention, for the sieges were frequent by the neighbours when any unusually ambrosial odour spread itself from the den to the neighbouring studies. The door panels were in a normal state of smash, but the frame of the door resisted all besiegers, and behind it the owner carried on his varied pursuits; much in the same state of mind, I should
 213 fancy, as a Border-farmer⁴ lived in, in the days of

¹ like the Russian engineers at Sebastopol. Während der fast ein Jahr dauernden Belagerung der Festung Sebastopol im Krimkriege durch die mit den Türken verbündeten Engländer und Franzosen, welche mit der Einnahme des Malakow am 8. September 1855 endete, wurden die Verteidigungsarbeiten von dem General Grafen Tollenen geleitet.

² to invest, intransitiv: eine Kapitalanlage in einem Blasrohr machen, d. h. sich ein solches beschaffen.

³ to tell on, siehe S. 202.

⁴ a Border-farmer: ein Landmann des englischen Grenzstreifens (the borders), der vor den Räuberzügen der Schotten nie sicher war. Vergl. S. 39 u. 238. Mosstroopers (trooping over the moss = moor) bezeichnet die Banden der Freibeuter; hold, gewöhnlich für stronghold, fester Platz, hier einfach Wohnsitz, den man sich, so gut es gehen wollte, besetzt vorstellen muß.

the old mosstroopers, when his hold might be summoned or his cattle carried off at any minute of night or day.

"Open, Martin, old boy—it's only I, Tom Brown."

"Oh, very well, stop a moment." One bolt went back. "You're sure East isn't there?"

"No, no, hang it, open." Tom gave a kick, the other bolt creaked, and he entered the den.

Den indeed it was, about five feet six inches long by five wide, and seven feet high. About six tattered schoolbooks, and a few chemical books, Taxidermy¹, Stanley on Birds², and an odd volume of Bewick³, the latter in much better preservation, occupied the top shelves. The other shelves, where they had not been cut away and used by the owner for other purposes, were fitted up for the abiding places of birds, beasts and reptiles. There was no attempt at⁴ carpet or curtain. The table was entirely occupied by the great work of Martin, the electric machine, which was covered carefully with the remains of his tablecloth. The jackdaw cage occupied one wall, and the other was adorned by a small hatchet, a pair of climbing irons⁵, and his tin candle-box, in which he was for the time being endeavouring to raise a hopeful young family of field-mice. As nothing should

¹ Taxidermy (schlecht genug gebildet aus *τάξις* und *δέσµα*): das Ausfalgen und Ausstopfen von Tieren. Als Büchertitel ist der Ausdruck noch üblich. Taxidermy; or bird-and animal stuffing made easy. 12°. London 1858.

² Stanley on Birds. Edward Stanley, D. D., Bischof von Norwich, 1779—1849, war Verfasser des Werkes A Familiar History of Birds. II vols. 18^{mo}, 1835, seitdem oft wieder aufgelegt.

³ Thomas Bewick (bū'ik), 1753—1828, "the reviver of wood engraving," veröffentlichte, außer Illustrationen zu Dichterverken und Fabeln, A General History of Quadrupeds, A History of British Birds, sowie British Fishes. Über sein Hauptwerk, die britischen Vögel (zuerst 1797), vergl. Jane Eyre, I, 2 ff.

⁴ no attempt at. Es war nicht einmal ein Versuch gemacht, einen Teppich oder Gardinen anzubringen.

⁵ climbing irons, siehe S. 80.

be let to lie useless, it was well that the candle-box was thus occupied, for candles Martin never had. A pound was issued to him weekly, as to the other boys, but as candles were available capital, and easily exchangeable for birds'-eggs or young birds, Martin's pound invariably found its way in a few hours to Howlett's¹ the bird-fancier's, in the Bilton Road², who would give a hawk's or nightingale's egg or young linnet in exchange. Martin's ingenuity was therefore for ever on the rack³ to supply himself with a light; just now he had hit upon a grand invention, and the den was lighted by a flaring cotton-wick issuing from a ginger-beer bottle full of
 214 some doleful composition. When light altogether failed him, Martin would loaf about by the fires in the passages or Hall, after the manner of Diggs, and try to do his verses or learn his lines by the fire-light.

"Well, old boy, you haven't got any sweeter in the den this half. How that stuff in the bottle stinks. Never mind, I ain't going to stop, but you come up after prayers to our study; you know young Arthur; we've got Gray's study. We'll have a good supper and talk about birds'-nesting."

Martin was evidently highly pleased at the invitation, and promised to be up without fail.

As soon as prayers were over, and the sixth and fifth-form boys had withdrawn to the aristocratic seclusion of their own room, and the rest, or democracy, had sat down to their supper in the Hall, Tom and Arthur, having secured their allowances of bread

¹ Howlett (für owlet), recht hübscher Name für einen Vogelhändler. Bird-fancier, wie dog-fancier: Hundeverkäufer.

² the Bilton Road, in geringer Entfernung westlich von der Schule, führt nach Bilton, einem Dorf südwestlich von Rugby in der Entfernung von einer englischen Meile.

³ on the rack (set on the rack): auf die Folter gespannt, angepannt. Vergl. to rack one's brains.

and cheese, started on their feet¹ to catch the eye of the præpostor of the week, who remained in charge during supper, walking up and down the Hall. He happened to be an easy-going² fellow, so they got a pleasant nod to their "Please may I go out?" and away they scrambled to prepare for Martin a sumptuous banquet. This Tom had insisted on, for he was in great delight on the occasion; the reason of which delight must be expounded. The fact was, this was the first attempt at a friendship of his own which Arthur had made, and Tom hailed it as a grand step. The ease with which he himself became hail-fellow-well-met³ with anybody, and blundered into and out of twenty friendships a half-year, made him sometimes sorry and sometimes angry at Arthur's reserve and loneliness. True, Arthur was always pleasant, and even jolly, with any boys who came with Tom to their study; but Tom felt that it was only through him, as it were, that his chum associated with others, and that but for him Arthur would have been dwelling in a wilderness. This increased his consciousness of responsibility; and though he hadn't reasoned it out and made it clear to himself, yet somehow he knew that this responsibility, this trust which he had taken on him without thinking about it, head-over-heels⁴ in fact, was the centre and turning-point of his school-life, that which was to make him or mar⁵ him; his

¹ started on their feet: machten sich auf die Beine.

² easy-going, siehe S. 99.

³ hail-fellow-well-met, aus einem Ruf (hail fellow! well met! heil Gefell! schön, daß wir uns getroffen haben!) zu einem Adjektiv geworden und regelmäßig verbunden mit with als Bezeichnung der Geselligkeit; to be (become) hail-fellow-well-met with anybody: ein Allerweltsfreund sein (werden).

⁴ head-over-heels (heels over head): in totem Wirbel Hals über Kopf, während headlong „Überstürzung“ bedeutet.

⁵ to make him or mar him: zu seinem Wohl oder Wehe; eine bei Shakespeare häufige Zusammenstellung.

appointed work and trial for the time being. And Tom was becoming a new boy, though with frequent tumbles in the dirt¹ and perpetual hard battle with himself, and was daily growing in manfulness and thoughtfulness, as every high-couraged and well-principled boy must, when he finds himself for the first time consciously at grips with² self and the devil. Already he could turn almost without a sigh, from the school-gates, from which had just scampered off East and three or four others of his own particular set, bound for some jolly lark not quite according to law, and involving probably a row with louts, keepers, or farm-labourers, the skipping³ dinner or calling-over, some of Phœbe Jennings'⁴ beer, and a very possible flogging at the end of all as a relish. He had quite got over the stage⁵ in which he would grumble to himself, "Well, hang it, it's very hard of the Doctor to have saddled me with Arthur⁶. Why couldn't he have chummed him with Fogey⁷, or Thomkin, or any of the fellows who never do anything but walk round the close, and finish their copies⁸ the first day they're set?" But although all

¹ though with frequent tumbles in the dirt: obgleich er manchmal wieder in den Kot sank. Vergl. to trample a thing in the dirt: etwas mit Füßen treten, in den Kot ziehen.

² at grips with, grappling (fighting hand to hand) with, eigentlich: sich fassend mit (grip: Griff beim Ringen); übertragen allgemeiner: in heftigem Kampfe mit. Vergl. S. 227: The grip of their arms wasn't enough to keep them up.

³ to skip dinner: beim Mittagessen ausbleiben. To skip a line: eine Zeile überspringen, auslassen; to skip a chapter: ein Kapitel überschlagen.

⁴ Phœbe (fē'bē) Jennings: eine Schenkvirtin in Rugby.

⁵ got over the stage: über die Stufe der Entwicklung, über den Standpunkt hinaus. Vergl. im folgenden although all this was past.

⁶ to have saddled me with Arthur: mir Arthur aufgedrückt zu haben. Saddled with the expense of bridges and highways. Webster.

⁷ Fogey (alter Frippeuse) erweckt die Vorstellung des Alters, der Dämerei und Lächerlichkeit, Thomkin die eines kleinen Knirpses.

⁸ copies, siehe S. 137.

this was past, he often longed, and felt that he was right in longing, for more time for the legitimate pastimes of cricket, fives, bathing, and fishing within bounds, in which Arthur could not yet be his companion; and he felt that when the young 'un (as he now generally called him) had found a pursuit and some other friend for himself, he should be able to give more time to the education of his own body with a clear conscience.

And now what he so wished for had come to pass; he almost hailed it as a special providence (as ²¹⁶ indeed it was, but not for the reasons he gave for it — what providences are?) that Arthur should have singled out Martin of all fellows for a friend. "The old Madman is the very fellow," thought he; "he will take him scrambling over half the country after birds' eggs and flowers, make him run and swim and climb like an Indian, and not teach him a word of anything bad, or keep him from his lessons. What luck!" And so, with more than his usual heartiness, he dived into his cupboard, and hauled out an old knuckle-bone of ham, and two or three bottles of beer, together with the solemn pewter¹ only used on state occasions; while Arthur, equally elated at the easy accomplishment of his first act of volition in the joint establishment, produced from his side a bottle of pickles and a pot of jam², and cleared the table. In a minute or two the noise of the boys coming up from supper was heard, and Martin knocked and was admitted, bearing his bread and cheese, and the three fell to with hearty good-will upon the viands, talking faster than they ate, for all shyness disappeared in a moment before Tom's bottled

¹ pewter: ein Krug aus Hartzinn, einer dem Britannia-Metall ähnlichen Komposition. Dick. Pickw. Cl. Vol. II. Ch. 9: The beer being served up, as Mr. Sawyer remarked, "in its native pewter."

² jam: musartiges Eingemachtes; die gewöhnlichste Sorte ist gooseberry jam: Stachelbeermus.

beer and hospitable ways. "Here's Arthur, a regular young town mouse¹, with a natural taste for the woods, Martin, longing to break his neck climbing trees, and with a passion for young snakes."

"Well, I say," sputtered out Martin, eagerly, "will you come to-morrow, both of you, to Caldecott's Spinney, then, for I know of a kestrel's² nest, up a fir-tree—I can't get at it without help; and, Brown, you can climb against any one³."

"Oh yes, do let us go," said Arthur; "I never saw a hawk's nest, nor a hawk's egg."

"You just come down to my study then, and I'll show you five sorts," said Martin.

"Ay, the old Madman has got the best collection
217 in the house, out-and-out," said Tom; and then Martin, warming with unaccustomed good cheer and the chance of a convert, launched out into a proposed birds'-nesting campaign, betraying all manner of important secrets; a golden-crested wren's⁴ nest near Butlin's Mound⁵, a moor-hen that was sitting on nine eggs in a pond down the Barby Road⁶, and a kingfisher's nest in a corner of the old canal above Brownsover Mill⁷. He had heard, he said, that no one had ever got a kingfisher's⁸ nest out perfect,

¹ town mouse: Stadtfind. Pfeffer. Anspielung auf die Fabel von der Landmaus und Stadtmaus. *Fabulae Aesopicae* ed. Halm, 297. Hor. Sat. II, 6, 79 ff. Dieselbe hat in England eine besondere Berühmtheit erlangt durch die 1687 erschienene Behandlung von Matthew Prior, 1664—1721, und Charles Montague (später Earl of Halifax), 1661—1715, *The Hind and the Panther Transvers'd to the Story of the Country Mouse and the City Mouse*.

² kestrel: der Turmfalke (*tinnunculus alaudarius*).

³ you can climb against any one: du kannst es im Klettern mit jedem aufnehmen.

⁴ golden-crested wren: das Goldhähnchen (*motacilla regulus*).

⁵ Butlin's Mound, vielleicht ein Hümngrab, etwa 300 Meter von der Schule entfernt, an der nach Westen führenden Straße Lawford road.

⁶ the Barby Road: an der Ostseite von School-close entlang nach Barby (S. 125.) ⁷ Brownsover Mill, siehe S. 183.

⁸ kingfisher: der europäische Eisvogel, *alcedo ispida*.

and that the British Museum, or the Government, or somebody, had offered £100 to any one who could bring them a nest and eggs not damaged. In the middle of which astounding announcement, to which the others were listening with open ears, already considering the application of the £100, a knock came at the door, and East's voice was heard craving admittance.

"There's Harry," said Tom; "we'll let him in—I'll keep him steady, Martin. I thought the old boy would smell out the supper."

The fact was that Tom's heart had already smitten him for not asking his "fidus Achates"¹ to the feast, although only an extempore affair; and though prudence and the desire to get Martin and Arthur together alone at first had overcome his scruples, he was now heartily glad to open the door, broach another bottle of beer, and hand over the old ham-knuckle to the searching of his old friend's pocket-knife.

"Ah, you greedy vagabonds," said East, with his mouth full; "I knew there was something going on when I saw you cut off out of Hall so quick with your suppers. What a stunning tap², Tom! you are a winner³ for bottling the swipes."

"I've had practice enough for the sixth in my time, and it's hard if I haven't picked up a wrinkle⁴ or two for my own benefit."

"Well, old Madman, how goes the birds'-nesting 218 campaign? How's Howlett? I expect the young

¹ fidus Achates: ein treuer Begleiter des Aeneas. Verg. Aen. VI, 158 (und sonst).

² tap: Anstich (vom Fassbier), Getränk überhaupt. Stunning, siehe S. 97.

³ a winner (a oner, a one-er), a stunner: ein Hauptferl. Swipes, eigentlich: Dünnbier, dann im slang auch von besserem Bier; besonders Schlußausdruck.

⁴ a wrinkle, siehe S. 172.

Tom Brown's School Days. II.

rooks'll be out in another fortnight, and then my turn comes."

"There'll be no young rooks fit for pies for a month yet; shows how much you know about it," rejoined Martin, who, though very good friends with East, regarded him with considerable suspicion for his propensity to practical jokes.

"Scud knows nothing and cares for nothing but grub¹ and mischief," said Tom; "but young rook pie, specially when you've had to climb for them, is very pretty eating. However, I say, Scud, we're all going after a hawk's nest to-morrow, in Caldecott's Spinney; and if you'll come and behave yourself, we'll have a stunning climb."

"And a bathe in Aganippe². Hooray! I'm your man!"

"No, no; no bathing in Aganippe; that's where our betters go."

"Well, well, never mind. I'm for the hawk's nest and anything that turns up."

And the bottled-beer being finished, and his hunger appeased, East departed to his study, "that sneak Jones³," as he informed them, who had just got into the sixth and occupied the next study, having instituted a nightly visitation upon East and his chum, to their no small discomfort.

When he was gone, Martin rose to follow, but Tom stopped him. "No one goes near New Row," said he, "so you may just as well stop here and do your verses, and then we'll have some more talk. We'll be no end quiet; besides, no præpostor comes here now—we haven't been visited once this half."

¹ grub, siehe S. 98.

² Aganippe: den Mufen heilige Quelle am Fuße des Helikon in Böotien. Man hatte den Namen einem von Dr. Arnold, nicht von den Schülern benutzten Badeplatz im Abon am Wege nach Brownsover gegeben.

³ Jones, siehe S. 196.

So the table was cleared, the cloth restored, and the three fell to work with Gradus and dictionary upon the morning's vulgus¹.

They were three very fair examples of the way ²¹⁹ in which such tasks were done at Rugby, in the consulship of Plancus². And doubtless the method is little changed, for there is nothing new under the sun, especially at schools.

Now be it known unto all you boys who are at schools which do not rejoice in the time-honoured institution of the Vulgus, (commonly supposed to have been established by William of Wykeham³ at Winchester, and imported to Rugby by Arnold, more for the sake of the lines which were learnt by heart with it, than for its own intrinsic value, as I've always understood,) that it is a short exercise, in Greek or Latin verse, on a given subject, the minimum number of lines being fixed for each form. The master of the form gave out at fourth lesson on the previous day the subject for next morning's vulgus, and at first lesson each boy had to bring his vulgus ready to be looked over; and with the vulgus, a certain number of lines from one of the Latin or Greek poets then being construed⁴ in the form had to be got by heart. The master at first lesson called up each boy in the form in order, and put him on⁵ in the lines. If he couldn't say them, or seem to say them, by reading them off the master's or some other boy's book who stood near, he was sent back⁶,

¹ vulgus, vom lateinischen vulgus: das gemeine Volk, findet seine Erklärung S. 219.

² Plancus, siehe S. 89.

³ William of (de) Wykeham (wɪk'əm), 1324—1404, Bischof von Winchester und Kanzler des Reichs unter Richard II., gründete die Schule von Winchester, sowie New College in Oxford (ursprünglich genannt St. Mary College of Winchester). Dr. Arnold hatte seine letzte Vorbereitung zur Universität in Winchester empfangen.

⁴ to construe, siehe S. 120.

⁵ to put on, siehe S. 140.

⁶ to send back: den Schüler, der zum Auftragen an das Ratheder

and went below all the boys who did so say or seem to say them; but in either case his vulgus was looked over by the master, who gave and entered in his book, to the credit or discredit of the boy, so many marks¹ as the composition merited. At Rugby vulgus and lines were the first lesson every other day in the week, or Tuesdays, Thursdays, and Saturdays; and as there were thirty-eight weeks² in the school year, it is obvious to the meanest capacity that the master of each form had to set one hundred and fourteen subjects every year, two hundred and twenty-eight every two years, and so on. Now to persons of moderate invention this was a considerable task, and human nature being prone to repeat
 220 itself, it will not be wondered that the masters gave the same subjects sometimes over again after a certain lapse of time. To meet and rebuke this bad habit of the masters, the school-boy-mind, with its accustomed ingenuity, had invented an elaborate system of tradition. Almost every boy kept his own vulgus written out in a book, and these books were duly handed down from boy to boy, till (if the tradition has gone on till now) I suppose the popular boys, in whose hands bequeathed vulgus-books have accumulated, are prepared with three or four vulguses on any subject in heaven or earth, or in "more worlds than one³," which an unfortunate master can pitch upon. At any rate, such lucky fellows had generally one for themselves and one for a friend in my time. The only objection to the traditionary

herangetreten ist, auf seinen Platz zurückgeschiden. ©. 221: He wouldn't be sent back. ©. 223: The next morning at first lesson Tom was turned back in his lines.

¹ marks, good (or bad) marks: Points.

² thirty-eight weeks. Das englische Schuljahr (school-year) ist etwas kürzer als das unsrige.

³ more worlds than one, Anspielung auf das Werk des Physikers Sir David Brewster (1781—1868), *More Worlds than One*, the *Creed of the Philosopher and the Hope of the Christian*.

method of doing your vulguses was, the risk that the successions might have become confused, and so that you and another follower of traditions should show up the same identical vulgus some fine morning; in which case, when it happened, considerable grief was the result—but when did such risk hinder boys or men from short cuts¹ and pleasant paths?

Now in the study that night, Tom was the upholder of the traditionary method of vulgus doing. He carefully produced two large vulgus-books, and began diving into them, and picking out a line here, and an ending there (tags², as they were vulgarly called), till he had gotten all that he thought he could make fit. He then proceeded to patch his tags together with the help of his Gradus, producing an incongruous and feeble result of eight elegiac lines³, the minimum quantity for his form, and finishing up with two highly moral lines extra, making ten in all, which he cribbed⁴ entire from one of his books, beginning "O genus humanum⁵," and which he himself must have used a dozen times before, whenever an unfortunate or wicked hero, of whatever nation or language under the sun, was the sub-²²¹ject. Indeed, he began to have great doubts whether the master wouldn't remember them, and so only threw them in as extra lines, because in any case they would call off attention from the other tags, and if detected, being extra lines, he wouldn't be sent back to do two more in their place, while if

¹ short cut: ein Nichtweg.

² tags: kleine Stüdchen, Brocken, ähnlich wie tag-ends: Tausenden, odds and ends: Abfälle. Aus dem hier und da Herausgerissenen werden Verse zusammengefügt (patched together).

³ elegiac lines (elegiacs): Distichen in elegischem Versmaß (Hexameter und Pentameter).

⁴ to crib: maufen, hier: abschreiben. Vergl. the crib, S. 263.

⁵ O genus humanum: o Menschengeschlecht. Der zum Glückver bestimmten hochtrabende Ausruf zu Anfang eines Hexameters ist wohl entlehnt aus Lucr. V, 1192: o genus infelix humanum.

they passed muster again he would get marks for them.

The second method pursued by Martin may be called the dogged¹, or prosaic method. He, no more than Tom, took any pleasure in the task, but having no old vulgus-books of his own, or any one's else, could not follow the traditionary method, for which too, as Tom remarked, he hadn't the genius. Martin then proceeded to write down eight lines in English, of the most matter-of fact kind, the first that came into his head; and to convert these, line by line, by main force of Gradus and dictionary, into Latin that would scan². This was all he cared for, to produce eight lines with no false quantities or concords³: whether the words were apt, or what the sense was, mattered nothing; and, as the article was all new, not a line beyond the minimum did the followers of the dogged method ever produce.

The third, or artistic method, was Arthur's. He considered first what point in the character or event which was the subject could most neatly be brought out within the limits of a vulgus, trying always to get his idea into the eight lines, but not binding himself to ten or even twelve lines if he couldn't do this. He then set to work, as much as possible without Gradus or other help, to clothe his idea in appropriate Latin or Greek, and would not be satisfied till he had polished it well up with the aptest and most poetic words and phrases he could get at.

A fourth method indeed was used in the school, but of too simple a kind to require a comment. It

¹ dogged, etwa: hüffelartig; Bezeichnung der Hartnäckigkeit.

² that would scan: das sich würde scandieren lassen, das einen Vers bildete.

³ concord: Übereinstimmung der Satztheile, die sich nach einander richten, wie Übereinstimmung des Adjektivs mit dem Substantiv, zu dem es gehört, in Genus, Numerus und Kasus, oder Übereinstimmung des Verbums mit dem Subjekt im Numerus und in der Person.

may be called the vicarious method¹, obtained 222 amongst big boys of lazy or bullying habits, and consisted simply in making clever boys whom they could thrash do their whole vulgus for them, and construe it to them afterwards; which latter is a method not to be encouraged, and which I strongly advise you all not to practise. Of the others, you will find the traditionary most troublesome, unless you can steal your vulguses whole (*experto crede*²), and that the artistic method pays³ the best both in marks and other ways.

The vulguses being finished by nine o'clock, and Martin having rejoiced above measure in the abundance of light, and of Gradus and dictionary, and other conveniences almost unknown to him for getting through the work, and having been pressed by Arthur to come and do his verses there whenever he liked, the three boys went down to Martin's den, and Arthur was initiated into the lore of bird's-eggs, to his great delight. The exquisite colouring and forms astonished and charmed him who had scarcely ever seen any but a hen's egg or an ostrich's, and by the time he was lugged away to bed he had learned the names of at least twenty sorts, and dreamt of the glorious perils of tree-climbing and that he had found a roc's egg⁴ in the island as big as Sindbad's and clouded like a tit-lark's, in

¹ vicarious method: die Methode des Vikariatszwanges.

² *experto crede*, ein auß Verg. Aen. XI, 283, *experto credite*, entlehntes und im Mittelalter zu *experto crede Roberto* umgewandeltes Alltagswort. Vergl. Büchmann, Geflügelte Worte, 15. Aufl. S. 276 f.

³ to pay: sich bezahlt machen, sich verwerten lassen, etwas einbringen; stehender Ausdruck von Leistungen auf der Schule, Universität und im Examen.

⁴ a roc's egg: ein Niesenei des Niesenvogels roc, wird von Sindbad the Sailor auf seiner zweiten Seefahrt in The Arabian Nights' Entertainments mit den Worten beschrieben: "The circumference might be about fifty paces."

blowing¹ which Martin and he had nearly been drowned in the yolk.

Chapter IV.

The Bird-Fanciers.

"I have found out a gift for my fair,
I have found where the wood-pigeons breed:
But let me the plunder forbear,
She would say 'twas a barbarous deed."

ROWE.

"And now, my lad, take them five shilling,
And on my advice in future think;
So Billy pouched them all so willing,
And got that night disguised in drink."

MS. BALLAD.

223 The next morning at first lesson Tom was turned back² in his lines, and so had to wait till the second round³, while Martin and Arthur said theirs all right and got out of school at once. When Tom got out and ran down to breakfast at Harrowell's they were missing, and Stumps informed him that they had swallowed down their breakfasts and gone off together, where, he couldn't say. Tom hurried over his own breakfast, and went first to Martin's study and then to his own, but no signs of the missing boys were to be found. He felt half angry and jealous of Martin—where could they be gone?

He learnt second lesson with East and the rest in no very good temper, and then went out into the quadrangle. About ten minutes before school Martin and Arthur arrived in the quadrangle breathless; and, catching sight of him, Arthur rushed up all excitement and with a bright glow on his face.

¹ to blow: (ein Ei) ausblasen.

² turned back, siehe S. 219. In his lines: beim Auffagen seiner Berse.

³ till the second round: bis die Reihe wieder an ihn kam.

"Oh, Tom, look here," cried he, holding out three moor-hen's eggs; "we've been down the Barby Road to the pool Martin told us of last night, and just see what we've got."

Tom wouldn't be pleased, and only looked out ²²⁴ for something to find fault with.

"Why, young un," said he, "what have you been after? You don't mean to say you've been wading?"

The tone of reproach made poor little Arthur shrink up in a moment and look piteous, and Tom with a shrug of his shoulders turned his anger on Martin.

"Well, I didn't think, Madman, that you'd have been such a muff¹ as to let him be getting wet through at this time of day. You might have done the wading yourself."

"So I did, of course, only he would come in too to see the nest. We left six eggs in; they'll be hatched in a day or two."

"Hang the eggs!" said Tom; "a fellow can't turn his back for a moment but all his work's undone. He'll be laid up for a week for this precious lark, I'll be bound."

"Indeed, Tom, now," pleaded Arthur, "my feet ain't wet, for Martin made me take off my shoes and stockings and trousers."

"But they are wet and dirty, too—can't I see?" answered Tom; "and you'll be called up and floored² when the master sees what a state you're in. You haven't looked at second lesson, you know." Oh Tom, you old humbug³! you to be upbraiding any

¹ muff, siehe S. 109.

² floored, siehe S. 208.

³ you old humbug! du alter Heuchler! Humbug: Schwindel (S. 155) bezeichnet in der Regel etwas Unsolides und Unreelles. Hier, wie oft, von einer Person gebraucht, siehe es sich ergeben durch quack:

one with not learning their lessons! If you hadn't been floored yourself now at first lesson, do you mean to say you wouldn't have been with them? and you've taken away all poor little Arthur's joy and pride in his first birds' eggs; and he goes and puts them down in the study, and takes down his books with a sigh, thinking he has done something horribly wrong, whereas he has learnt on in advance much more than will be done at second lesson.

But the old Madman hasn't, and gets called up and makes some frightful shots¹, losing about ten
225 places², and all but getting floored. This somewhat appeases Tom's wrath, and by the end of the lesson he has regained his temper. And afterwards in their study he begins to get right again³, as he watches Arthur's intense joy at seeing Martin blowing the eggs and glueing them carefully on to bits of cardboard, and notes the anxious loving looks which the little fellow casts sidelong at him. And then he thinks, "What an ill-tempered beast I am! Here's just what I was wishing for last night come about, and I'm spoiling it all," and in another five minutes has swallowed the last mouthful of his bile⁴, and is repaid by seeing his little sensitive-plant expand again, and sun itself in his smiles.

After dinner the Madman is busy with the preparations for their expedition, fitting new straps on to his climbing irons⁵, filling large pill-boxes with cotton wool, and sharpening East's small axe. They

Quackfalter, der anderen etwas vorſchwindelt; Tom redet ſich ſelbſt etwas vor, was ihm eigentlich fern liegt.

¹ shot: ein Schuß außß Geratewohl; frightful shots: entſetzliche Fehſchüſſe. ² losing about ten places: wobei er etwa zehn Plätze herunterkommt.

³ to get right again: wieder vernünftig werden.

⁴ has swallowed the last mouthful of his bile: hat ſeine Galle (ſeinen Ärger) wie Medizin biß zum letzten Bißchen heruntergewürgt.

⁵ climbing irons, ſiehe S. 80. Cotton-wool, ſiehe S. 195.

carry all their munitions into calling-over¹, and directly afterwards, having dodged such præpostors as are on the look-out for fags at cricket, the four set off at a smart trot down the Lawford footpath² straight for Caldecott's Spinney and the hawk's nest.

Martin leads the way in high feather³; it is quite a new sensation to him getting companions, and he finds it very pleasant, and means to show them all manner of proofs of his science and skill. Brown and East may be better at cricket and football and games, thinks he, but out in the fields and woods see⁴ if I can't teach them something. He has taken the leadership already, and strides away in front with his climbing-irons strapped under one arm, his pecking-bag⁵ under the other, and his pockets and hat full of pill-boxes, cotton wool, and other etceteras. Each of the others carries a pecking-bag, and East his hatchet.

When they had crossed three or four fields without a check, Arthur began to lag, and Tom seeing this shouted to Martin to pull up⁶ a bit: "We ain't 226 out Hare-and-hounds⁷—what's the good of grinding on⁸ at this rate?"

"There's the Spinney," said Martin, pulling up on the brow of a slope at the bottom of which lay Lawford brook, and pointing to the top of the op-

¹ calling over, siehe S. 79. To dodge, transitiv: jemandem ein Schnippchen schlagen (ausweichen).

² Long Lawford liegt etwas über eine englische Meile westlich von Rugby an der Eisenbahn. Caldecott's Spinney, siehe S. 183.

³ in high feather: in gehobener Stimmung, obenauß; von einem Federbusch entlehnt. ⁴ see: wollen wir sehen.

⁵ pecking-bag: Sammeltasche. Thiem.

⁶ to pull up, wie S. 233: Halt machen; eigentlich vom Anziehen der Bügel. Vergl. S. 75.

⁷ Hare-and-hands, siehe S. 106, 124 ff.

⁸ to grind on: weiter klabastern. To grind, intransitiv: sich in einer Tretnühle abarbeiten, oßsen, büßeln (Schulausdruck), wie S. 239: always ready to leave the grind, as he called it; ferner von scharfem Reiten u. dergl.

posite slope; "the nest is in one of those high fir-trees at this end. And down by the brook there, I know of a sedge-bird's¹ nest; we'll go and look at it coming back."

"Oh, come on, don't let us stop," said Arthur, who was getting excited at the sight of the wood; so they broke into a trot again, and were soon across the brook, up the slope, and into the Spinney. Here they advanced as noiselessly as possible, lest keepers or other enemies should be about, and stopped at the foot of a tall fir, at the top of which Martin pointed out with pride the kestrel's nest, the object of their quest.

"Oh where! which is it?" asks Arthur, gaping up in the air, and having the most vague idea of what it would be like.

"There, don't you see?" said East, pointing to a lump of mistletoe in the next tree, which was a beech: he saw that Martin and Tom were busy with the climbing-irons, and couldn't resist the temptation of hoaxing. Arthur stared and wondered more than ever.

"Well, how curious! it doesn't look a bit like what I expected," said he.

"Very odd birds, kestrels," said East, looking waggishly at his victim, who was still star-gazing.

"But I thought it was in a fir-tree?" objected Arthur.

"Ah, don't you know? that's a new sort of fir, which old Caldecott brought from the Himalayas."

"Really!" said Arthur; "I'm glad I know that—how unlike our firs they are! They do² very well too here, don't they? the Spinney's full of them."

227 "What's that humbug he's telling you?" cried

¹ sedge-bird, sedge-warbler: der Ufer[dil]fänger, calamodyta phragmitis.

² to do: gebeißen, fortkommen.

Tom, looking up, having caught the word *Himalayas*, and suspecting what East was after.

"Only about this fir," said Arthur, putting his hand on the stem of the beech.

"Fir!" shouted Tom, "why, you don't mean to say, young 'un, you don't know a beech when you see one?"

Poor little Arthur looked terribly ashamed, and East exploded in laughter which made the wood ring.

"I've hardly ever seen any trees," faltered Arthur.

"What a shame to hoax him, Scud!" cried Martin. "Never mind, Arthur, you shall know more about trees than he does in a week or two."

"And isn't that the kestrel's nest, then?" asked Arthur.

"That! why, that's a piece of mistletoe. There's the nest, that lump of sticks up this fir."

"Don't believe him, Arthur," struck in the incorrigible East; "I just saw an old magpie go out of it."

Martin did not deign to reply to this sally, except by a grunt, as he buckled the last buckle of his climbing-irons; and Arthur looked reproachfully at East without speaking.

But now came the tug of war¹. It was a very difficult tree to climb until the branches were reached, the first of which was some fourteen feet up, for the trunk was too large at the bottom to be swarmed²; in fact, neither of the boys could reach more than half round it with their arms. Martin and Tom, both of whom had irons on, tried it without success at first; the fir bark broke away where they stuck the irons in as soon as they leant any weight on their feet, and the grip of their arms wasn't enough to

¹ the tug of war: der Ruck des Frießes, der heftigste Kampf. Nathaniel Lee (1650—1690), *Alexander the Great*, Act IV, Sc. 2: When Greeks join'd Greeks, there was the tug of war.

² to swarm a tree, familiär: einen Baum durch Umspannen mit den Armen und Knien erklettern.

keep them up; so, after getting up three or four feet, down they came slithering to the ground, barking¹ their arms and faces. They were furious, and East
 228 sat by laughing and shouting at each failure, "Two to one² on the old magpie!"

"We must try a pyramid³," said Tom at last. "Now, Scud, you lazy rascal, stick yourself against the tree!"

"I dare say⁴! and have you standing on my shoulders with the irons on: what do you think my skin's made of?" However, up he got, and leant against the tree, putting his head down and clasping it with his arms as far as he could. "Now then, Madman," said Tom, "you next."

"No, I'm lighter than you; you go next." So Tom got on East's shoulders, and grasped the tree above, and then Martin scrambled up on Tom's shoulders, amidst the totterings and groanings of the pyramid, and, with a spring which sent his supporters howling to the ground, clasped the stem some ten feet up, and remained clinging. For a moment or two they thought he couldn't get up, but then, holding on with arms and teeth, he worked first one iron, then the other, firmly into the bark, got another grip with his arms, and in another minute had hold of the lowest branch.

"All up with⁵ the old magpie now," said East; and, after a minute's rest, up went Martin, hand over hand⁶, watched by Arthur with fearful eagerness.

¹ barking, vom Abschälen der Bäume auf das Schinden der Haut übertragen.

² Two to one: zwei gegen eins (gewettet); on the old magpie: auf die Chancen der alten Elster, d. h. daß ihr das Nest nicht aushehmt.

³ a pyramid. Die Erklärung folgt; sie stellen sich einer auf die Schultern des andern, wie bei der Bildung einer Pyramide im Circus.

⁴ I dare say: ei freilich, das glaube ich schon würde euch passen, daß wäre schön.

⁵ All up with: es ist aus mit der alten Elster, sie ist futsch.

⁶ hand over hand: Griff über Griff. Pfeffer.

"Isn't it very dangerous?" said he.

"Not a bit," answered Tom; "you can't hurt if you only get good hand-hold¹. Try every branch with a good pull before you trust it, and then up you go."

Martin was now amongst the small branches close to the nest, and away dashed the old bird, and soared up above the trees, watching the intruder.

"All right—four eggs!" shouted he.

"Take 'em all!" shouted East; "that'll be one apiece²."

"No, no! leave one, and then she³ won't care," said Tom.

We boys had an idea that birds couldn't count, ²²⁹ and were quite content as long as you left one egg. I hope it is so.

Martin carefully put one egg into each of his boxes and the third into his mouth, the only other place of safety, and came down like a lamplighter⁴. All went well till he was within ten feet of the ground, when, as the trunk enlarged, his hold got less and less firm, and at last down he came with a run⁵, tumbling on to his back on the turf, spluttering and spitting out the remains of the great egg, which had broken by the jar⁶ of his fall.

"Ugh⁷, ugh—something to drink—ugh! it was addled," spluttered he, while the wood rang again with the merry laughter of East and Tom.

¹ to get good hand-hold: fest zufassen.

² apiece, gewöhnlich a-piece: eins für jeden.

³ she: die Alte. Thiem.

⁴ like a lamplighter, quick as a lamplighter; da der Laternen-ansteker stets im Trabe ist. Wir sagen: mit der Fügigkeit eines Jag-binders.

⁵ with a run: im Schuß.

⁶ jar: Erschütterung; gewöhnlich wird das Wort vom Anarren (einer Thür), oder von Zusammenstoß und Zwist gebraucht.

⁷ Ugh (ü), auch whew: hu; Ausruf des Erstaunens, Widerwillens und Entsetzens.

Then they examined the prizes, gathered up their things, and went off to the brook, where Martin swallowed huge draughts of water to get rid of the taste; and they visited the sedge-bird's nest, and from thence struck across the country in high glee, beating¹ the hedges and brakes as they went along; and Arthur at last, to his intense delight, was allowed to climb a small hedgerow oak for a magpie's nest with Tom, who kept all round him like a mother, and showed him where to hold and how to throw his weight²; and though he was in a great fright, didn't show it; and was applauded by all for his lissomness.

They crossed a road soon afterwards, and there close to them lay a heap of charming pebbles.

"Look here," shouted East, "here's luck! I've been longing for some good honest pecking³ this half hour. Let's fill the bags, and have no more of this foozling⁴ bird's-nesting."

No one objected, so each boy filled the fustian bag he carried full of stones: they crossed into the next field, Tom and East taking one side of the hedges, and the other two the other side. Noise
230 enough they made certainly, but it was too early in the season for the young birds, and the old birds were too strong on the wing for our young marksmen, and flew out of shot after the first discharge. But it was great fun, rushing along the hedgerows, and discharging stone after stone at blackbirds and chaffinches, though no result in the shape of slaughtered birds was obtained: and Arthur soon entered into it, and rushed to head back⁵ the birds,

¹ to beat: siehe S. 174.

² how to throw his weight: wie er den Schwerpunkt nicht verlor.

³ to peck, provinziell für: schmeißen (to pitch).

⁴ foozling: dämlich, langweilig; eigentlich: bumm machend.

⁵ to head back: vorlaufen und zurückstechen. Hoppe. Im

and shouted, and threw, and tumbled into ditches and over and through hedges, as wild as the Madman himself.

Presently the party, in full cry after¹ an old blackbird (who was evidently used to the thing and enjoyed the fun, for he would wait till they came close to him and then fly on for forty yards or so, and, with an impudent flicker² of his tail, dart into the depths of the quickset), came beating down a high double hedge, two on each side.

"There he is again," "Head him," "Let drive³," "I had him there," "Take care where you're throwing, Madman," the shouts might have been heard a quarter of a mile off. They were heard some two hundred yards off by a farmer and two of his shepherds, who were doctoring sheep in a fold in the next field.

Now, the farmer in question rented a house and yard situate at the end of the field in which the young bird-fanciers had arrived, which house and yard he didn't occupy or keep any one else in. Nevertheless, like a brainless and unreasoning Briton, he persisted in maintaining on the premises a large stock of cocks, hens, and other poultry. Of course, all sorts of depredators visited the place from time to time: foxes and gipsies wrought havoc in the night; while in the day time, I regret to have to confess that visits from the Rugby boys, and consequent disappearances of ancient⁴ and respectable fowls, were not unfrequent. Tom and East had during the period of their outlawry visited the barn in

folgenden head him = head him back. Bergl. to head off: zuvorkommen.

¹ in full cry after: in toller Jagd nach. Pfeiffer. Der Ausdruck ist vom Bellen und Heulen der Meute entlehnt.

² flicker, hier von Bewegung des Schwanzes, sonst vom Schlagen mit den Flügeln ohne Flug.

³ Let drive, wie sonst let fly: schieß loß, wirf zu.

⁴ ancient: uralt. Mac. W. Hast. 295: two ancient men.

231 question for felonious purposes, and on one occasion had conquered and slain a duck there, and borne away the carcase triumphantly, hidden in their handkerchiefs. However, they were sickened of¹ the practice by the trouble and anxiety which the wretched duck's body caused them. They carried it to Sally Harrowell's in hopes of a good supper; but she, after examining it, made a long face, and refused to dress or have anything to do with it. Then they took it into their study, and began plucking it themselves; but what to do with the feathers,—where to hide them?

"Good gracious, Tom, what a lot of feathers a duck has!" groaned East, holding a bagful in his hand, and looking disconsolately at the carcase, not yet half plucked.

"And I do think he's getting high² too, already," said Tom, smelling at him cautiously, "so we must finish him up soon."

"Yes, all very well; but how are we to cook³ him? I'm sure I ain't going to try it on in the hall or passages; we can't afford to be roasting ducks about⁴, our character's too bad."

"I wish we were rid of the brute," said Tom, throwing him on the table in disgust. And after a day or two more it became clear that got rid of he must be; so they packed him and sealed him up in brown paper, and put him in the cupboard of an unoccupied study, where he was found in the holidays by the matron, a grewsome⁵ body.

¹ sickened of: überdrüssig.

² he's getting high: sie ist schon angegangen. High vom *haut-goût* des Wildbrets.

³ to cook, allgemeiner Ausdruck, auch vom Braten gebraucht.

⁴ we can't afford to be roasting ducks about (mit Nachstellung der Präposition statt to be about roasting ducks): wir können uns nicht erlauben (eigentlich: es uns nicht leisten), uns mit Braten von Enten abzugeben.

⁵ grewsome, siehe S. 12.

They had never been duck-hunting there since, but others had, and the bold yeoman was very sore on the subject, and bent on making an example of the first boys he could catch. So he and his shepherds crouched behind the hurdles, and watched the party, who were approaching all unconscious.

Why should that old guinea-fowl be lying out in the hedge just at this particular moment of all the year? Who can say? Guinea-fowls always are—so²³² are all other things, animals, and persons, requisite for getting one into scrapes, always ready when any mischief can come of them. At any rate, just under East's nose popped out the old guinea-hen, scuttling along and shrieking "Come back, come back," at the top of her voice. Either of the other three might perhaps have withstood the temptation, but East first lets drive the stone he has in his hand at her, and then rushes to turn her into the hedge again. He succeeds, and then they are all at it for dear life, up and down the hedge in full cry, the "Come back, come back," getting shriller and fainter every minute.

Meantime, the farmer and his men steal over the hurdles and creep down the hedge towards the scene of action. They are almost within a stone's throw of Martin, who is pressing the unlucky chase hard, when Tom catches sight of them, and sings out, "Louts, 'ware¹ louts, your side! Madman, look ahead²!" and then catching hold of Arthur, hurries him away across the field towards Rugby as hard as they can tear³. Had he been by himself, he would have stayed to see it out⁴ with the others,

¹ 'ware: beware. Louts, siehe S. 77.

² look ahead (look out afore): vorn aufgepaßt, sieh dich vor. Ahead ist ein Seemannsausdruck; ob aber look ahead Ausruf des Wachenden Matrosen im Mastkorb ist, wie Pfeffer angiebt, möchte ich bezweifeln.

³ to tear: austragen, wie im folgenden to pelt.

⁴ to see it out: nicht bloß den Ausgang abzuwarten, sondern es

but now his heart sinks and all his pluck goes. The idea of being led up to the Doctor with Arthur for bagging fowls, quite unmans and takes half the run¹ out of him.

However, no boys are more able to take care of themselves than East and Martin; they dodge the pursuers, slip through a gap, and come pelting after Tom and Arthur, whom they catch up in no time; the farmer and his men are making good running² about a field behind. Tom wishes to himself that they had made off in any other direction, but now they are all in for it together, and must see it out. "You won't leave the young 'un, will you?" says he, as they haul poor little Arthur, already losing wind
 233 from the fright, through the next hedge. "Not we," is the answer from both. The next hedge is a stiff one; the pursuers gain horribly on them, and they only just pull Arthur through, with two great rents in his trousers, as the foremost shepherd comes up on the other side. As they start into the next field, they are aware of two figures walking down the footpath in the middle of it, and recognise Holmes and Diggs taking a constitutional³. Those good-natured fellows immediately shout "On." "Let's go to them and surrender," pants Tom.—Agreed.—And in another minute the four boys, to the great astonishment of those worthies, rush breathless up to Holmes and Diggs, who pull up to see what is the matter; and then the whole is explained by the appearance of the farmer and his men, who unite their forces and bear down on⁴ the knot of boys.

mit durchzuführen, wie im folgenden we are in for it, and must see it out.

¹ the run, siehe S. 95.

² to make good running: einen guten Lauf machen.

³ taking a constitutional: die ihren täglichen Spaziergang (zur Förderung der Gesundheit) machen.

⁴ to bear down on: losstürzen auf; eigentlich: gerade auf den Feind losjagen.

There is no time to explain, and Tom's heart beats frightfully quick, as he ponders, "Will they stand by us?"

The farmer makes a rush at East and collars him; and that young gentleman, with unusual discretion, instead of kicking his shins, looks appealingly at Holmes, and stands still.

"Hullo there, not so fast," says Holmes, who is bound to stand up for them till they are proved in the wrong. "Now what's all this about?"

"I've got the young varmint¹ at last, have I," pants the farmer; "why they've been a skulking about my yard and stealing my fowls, that's were 'tis; and if I doan't have they flogged for it, every one on 'em, my name ain't Thompson."

Holmes looks grave, and Diggs's face falls. They are quite ready to fight, no boys in the school more so; but they are præpostors, and understand their office, and can't uphold unrighteous causes.

"I haven't been near his old barn this half," cries East. "Nor I," "Nor I," chime in Tom and Martin. ²³⁴

"Now, Willum, didn't you see'm there last week?"

"Ees², I seen 'em sure enough," says Willum, grasping a prong he carried, and preparing for action.

The boys deny stoutly, and Willum is driven to admit that, "if it worn't they, 'twas chaps as like 'em as two peas'n³;" and "leastways he'll swear he see'd them two in the yard last Martinmas⁴," indicating East and Tom.

Holmes had time to meditate. "Now, sir," says he to Willum, "you see you can't remember what you have seen, and I believe the boys."

¹ varmint (vermin): die Untiere; oft üblich als Schimpfwort.

² Ees: yes. ³ peas'n: peas. As like as two peas: so ähnlich wie ein Ei dem anderen.

⁴ Martinmas (Martlemas); der Martinstag (11. November) hat für das Landvolk Bedeutung, da man nach alter Sitte an diesem Tage eingesalzenes Fleisch zum Räuchern aufhängt.

"I doan't care," blusters the farmer; "they was arter my fowls to-day, that's enough for I. Willum, you catch hold o' t'other chap. They've been a sneaking about this two hours, I tells 'ee," shouted he, as Holmes stands between Martin and Willum, "and have druv a matter of a dozen¹ young pullets pretty nigh to death."

"Oh, there's a whacker²!" cried East; "we haven't been within a hundred yards of his barn; we haven't been up here above ten minutes, and we've seen nothing but a tough old guinea-hen, who ran like a greyhound."

"Indeed, that's all true, Holmes, upon my honour," added Tom; "we weren't after his fowls; the guinea-hen ran out of the hedge under our feet, and we've seen nothing else."

"Drat³ their talk. Thee catch hold o' t'other, Willum, and come along wi 'un."

"Farmer Thompson," said Holmes, warning off Willum and the prong with his stick, while Diggs faced the other shepherd, cracking his fingers like pistol shots, "now listen to reason—the boys haven't been after your fowls, that's plain."

"Tells 'ee I see'd 'em⁴. Who be you, I should like to know?"

"Never you mind, Farmer," answered Holmes.

235 "And now I'll just tell you what it is—you ought to be ashamed of yourself for leaving all that poultry about, with no one to watch it, so near the School. You deserve to have it all stolen. So if you choose to come up to the Docter with them, I shall go with you, and tell him what I think of it."

The farmer began to take Holmes for a master;

¹ druv (drove): driven. A matter of, vulgär für about: jo'n Dugend.

² a whacker: eine Erzlüge, kolossale Lüge, slang.

³ Drat, siehe S. 20.

⁴ Tells 'ee I see'd 'em: I tell ye I saw them.

besides, he wanted to get back to his flock. Corporal punishment was out of the question, the odds were too great; so he began to hint at paying for the damage. Arthur jumped at this¹, offering to pay anything, and the farmer immediately valued the guinea-hen at half-a-sovereign.

"Half-a-sovereign!" cried East, now released from the farmer's grip; "well, that is a good one²! the hen ain't hurt a bit, and she's seven years old, I know, and as tough as whipcord³; she couldn't lay another egg to save her life."

It was at last settled that they should pay the farmer two shillings, and his man one shilling, and so the matter ended, to the unspeakable relief of Tom, who hadn't been able to say a word, being sick at heart at the idea of what the Doctor would think of him: and now the whole party of boys marched off down the footpath towards Rugby. Holmes, who was one of the best boys in the School, began to improve the occasion⁴. "Now, you youngsters," said he, as he marched along in the middle of them, "mind this; you're very well out of this scrape. Don't you go near Thompson's barn again; do you hear?"

Profuse promises from all, especially East.

"Mind, I don't ask questions," went on Mentor⁵, "but I rather think some of you have been there

¹ jumped at this: griff mit beiden Händen zu.

² that is a good one: daß ist nicht übel, daß kann doch kein Ernst sein.

³ as tough as whipcord: so zäh wie Seilenleder.

⁴ to improve the occasion (the moment): sich die Gelegenheit (den Augenblick) zu nütze machen. Man sagt auch to improve the shining hour, nach dem Liede von Isaac Watts: How doth the little busy bee Improve each shining hour.

⁵ Mentor, Freund des Odysseus, dessen Gestalt Athene annahm, als sie Telemachos auf der Fahrt nach Phylas in Lakedämon begleitete, ist herkömmliche Bezeichnung eines wirklichen Ratgebers geworden durch *Télémaque* von *Fénelon* (1651—1715).

before this after his chickens. Now, knocking over other people's chickens, and running off with them, is stealing. It's a nasty word, but that's the plain English of it. If the chickens were dead and lying in a shop, you wouldn't take them, I know that, any more than you would apples out of Griffith's¹ basket; 236 but there's no real difference between chickens running about and apples on a tree, and the same articles in a shop. I wish our morals were sounder in such matters. There's nothing so mischievous as these school distinctions, which jumble up right and wrong, and justify things in us for which poor boys would be sent to prison." And, good old Holmes delivered his soul on the walk home of many wise sayings, and, as the song says—

"Gee'd 'em a sight of good advice"—

which same sermon sank into them all, more or less, and very penitent they were for several hours. But truth compels me to admit that East at any rate forgot it all in a week, but remembered the insult which had been put upon him by Farmer Thompson, and with the Tadpole and other harebrained² youngsters, committed a raid³ on the barn soon afterwards, in which they were caught by the shepherds and severely handled, besides having to pay eight shillings, all the money they had in the world, to escape being taken up to the Doctor.

Martin became a constant inmate in the joint study from this time, and Arthur took to him so kindly⁴, that Tom couldn't resist slight fits of jealousy, which, however, he managed to keep to himself.

¹ Griffith, siehe S. 93.

² harebrained: unbesonnen, leichtsinnig, wild und toll. Man sagt as mad as a March-hare, weil der Hase in der Rammelzeit possierliche Männchen macht.

³ raid, schottisch für inroad.

⁴ took to him kindly: gewöhnte sich freundlich an ihn. A horse takes kindly to the bridle. Vergl. S. 198.

The kestrel's eggs had not been broken, strange to say, and formed the nucleus of Arthur's collection, at which Martin worked heart and soul; and introduced Arthur to Howlett the bird-fancier, and instructed him in the rudiments of the art of stuffing. In token of¹ his gratitude, Arthur allowed Martin to tattoo a small anchor on one of his wrists, which decoration, however, he carefully concealed from Tom. Before the end of the half year he had trained into² a bold climber and good runner, and, as Martin had foretold, knew twice as much about trees, birds, flowers, and many other things, as our good-hearted and facetious young friend Harry East.

Chapter V.

The Fight.

"Surgebat Macnevisius
Et mox jactabat ultro,
Pugnabo tuâ gratiâ
Feroçi hoc Mactwoltro."—*Etonian*³.

There is a certain sort of fellow—we who are used to studying boys all know him well enough— 237

¹ In token of: als Beweis, um zu beweisen; verschieden von by token (S. 11): als Beweis, auf Grund von.

² had trained into: hatte sich entwickelt zu; seltener Gebrauch des sonst transitiven Verbums.

³ The *Etonian* ist der Name einer in Eton College herausgegebenen Zeitschrift. Im zweiten Bande S. 29 findet sich ein Aufsatz: *Musæ O'Connorianæ*, der von der Übersetzung irischer und anderer Lieder ins Lateinische oder Griechische handelt. Die hier angeführte Strophe wird, wie es auch bei anderen Proben geschieht, zugleich im Original gegeben:

Mac Nevis leap'd up from his seat,
And made his bow, and told her:
"Kathleen, I'll fight for your dear sake
Along with fierce Mac Twolter.

Es folgt eine ausführliche Beschreibung des Kampfes, in welchem der weniger renommierte Mac Twolter schließlich siegt. Wahrscheinlich rührt das Gedicht von dem Verfasser des Aufsatzes selbst her.

of whom you can predicate with almost positive certainty, after he has been a month at school, that he is sure to have a fight, and with almost equal certainty that he will have but one. Tom Brown was one of these; and as it is our well-weighed intention to give a full, true, and correct account of Tom's only single combat with a school-fellow in the manner of our old friend *Bell's Life*¹, let those young persons whose stomachs are not strong, or who think a good set-to² with the weapons which God has given us all, an uncivilized, unchristian, or ungentlemanly affair, just skip this chapter at once, for it won't be to their taste.

It was not at all usual in those days for two School-house boys to have a fight. Of course there were exceptions, when some cross-grained³ hard-headed fellow came up who would never be happy unless he was quarrelling with his nearest neighbours, or when there was some class-dispute, between the fifth-form and the fags for instance, which required blood-letting; and a champion was picked out on each side tacitly, who settled the matter by a good hearty mill⁴. But for the most part the constant use of those surest keepers of the peace, the boxing-gloves⁵, kept the School-house boys from fighting one another. Two or three nights in every week the gloves were brought out, either in the hall

¹ *Bell's Life* in London, ein bekanntes Wochenblatt, welches alles auf sport Bezügliche bringt, z. B. Berichte über Wettrennen und Cricket-Parteien. Prize fights werden darin mit epischer Genauigkeit und in einer wahrhaft klassischen Weise beschrieben, oft mit genialen Wendungen, die mit der Widerwärtigkeit des Inhalts seltsam kontrastieren.

² a set-to, siehe S. 31: a spell at backwording.

³ cross-grained, siehe S. 86. Hard-headed, zugleich hartköpfig, dickköpfig, starrsinnig und kalt überlegend.

⁴ mill: Faustkampf, set-to.

⁵ boxing-gloves: dick gepolsterte Handschuhe für Übungen im Boxen. Die Rivalität führt oft zu Kämpfen mit solchen Schußwaffen, wie bei uns zu „Rapierjungen.“

or fifth-form room; and every boy who was ever likely to fight at all knew all his neighbours' prowess ²³⁸ perfectly well, and could tell to a nicety¹ what chance he would have in a stand-up fight² with any other boy in the house. But of course no such experience could be gotten as regarded boys in other houses; and as most of the other houses were more or less jealous of the School-house, collisions were frequent.

After all, what would life be without fighting, I should like to know? From the cradle to the grave, fighting, rightly understood, is the business, the real, highest, honestest business of every son of man. Every one who is worth his salt³ has his enemies, who must be beaten, be they evil thoughts and habits in himself, or spiritual wickedness in high places, or Russians, or Border-ruffians⁴, or Bill, Tom, or Harry, who will not let him live his life in quiet till he has thrashed them.

It is no good for Quakers⁵, or any other body of men, to uplift their voices against fighting. Human nature is too strong for them, and they don't follow their own precepts. Every soul of them is doing his own piece of fighting, somehow and somewhere. The world might be a better world without fighting, for anything I know, but it wouldn't be our world; and therefore I am dead against⁶ crying peace when there is no peace, and isn't meant to be. I am as

¹ to a nicety: bis aufs Haar. ² a stand-up fight (a stand-up): ein ernstlicher und hartnäckiger Faustkampf.

³ worth one's salt: seines Lohnes wert, indem Salz, wie in Salz und Brot, als einfaches und notwendiges Lebensbedürfnis galt. Vergl. salary (salarium).

⁴ Border-ruffians, siehe S. 39 u. 213.

⁵ Quakers. Die Quäker, welche sich selbst Society of Friends nennen, den Krieg verwerfen und den Kriegsdienst verweigern, erhielten ihren Namen 1650, als ihr Stifter George Fox, 1624—1691, in Derby vor den Richter gestellt wurde, "who was the first that called us Quakers, because I bid them tremble at the Word of the Lord."

⁶ dead against: ein Todfeind von; dead to: abgestorben gegen.

sorry as any man to see folk fighting the wrong people and the wrong things, but I'd a deal sooner see them doing that, than that they should have no fight¹ in them. So having recorded, and being about to record, my hero's fights of all sorts, with all sorts of enemies, I shall now proceed to give an account of his passage-at-arms² with the only one of his school-fellows whom he ever had to encounter in this manner.

It was drawing towards the close of Arthur's first half-year, and the May evenings were lengthening out. Locking-up was not till eight o'clock, and everybody was beginning to talk about what he
 239 would do in the holidays. The shell, in which form all our *dramatis personæ*³ now are, were reading amongst other things the last book of Homer's "Iliad⁴," and had worked through it as far as the speeches of the women over Hector's body. It is a whole school-day, and four or five of the School-house boys (amongst whom are Arthur, Tom, and East) are preparing third lesson together. They have finished the regulation forty lines⁵, and are for the most part getting very tired, notwithstanding the exquisite pathos of Helen's lamentation. And now several long four-syllabled words⁶

¹ fight: Kraft und Kampflust, häufig in den Wendungen to show fight, he has some fight left in him. S. 250: heaps of fight in him. S. 246: he'll hit all the fight out of you.

² a passage-at-arms, *un pas d'armes*: ein Waffengang; von den alten Turnierpielen herstammend.

³ *dramatis personæ*: die handelnden Personen, die Personen des Stückes; regelmäßige Überschrift in dramatischen Werken.

⁴ the last book of Homer's "Iliad." Im 24. Buch der Ilias wird geschildert, wie Priamos den Leichnam Hektors auslöst und bestatten läßt. Die folgenden Worte beziehen sich auf die Beklagen der Frauen um den Gefallenen, indem Andromache, Hekuba und Helena ihn der Reihe nach beweinen, v. 725 ff.

⁵ the regulation forty lines, siehe S. 77. Vergl. S. 243.

⁶ several long four-syllabled words. S. 242: That he had broken down just in the middle of all the long words.

come together, and the boy with the dictionary strikes work.

"I am not going to look out any more words," says he; "we've done the quantity. Ten to one we shan't get so far. Let's go out into the close."

"Come along, boys," criest East, always ready to leave the grind¹, as he called it; "our old coach² is laid up, you know, and we shall have one of the new masters, who's sure to go slow and let us down easy."

So an adjournment to the close was carried *nem. con.*³, little Arthur not daring to uplift his voice; but, being deeply interested in what they were reading, stayed quietly behind, and learnt on for his own pleasure.

As East had said, the regular master of the form was unwell, and they were to be heard by one of the new masters, quite a young man, who had only just left the university. Certainly it would be hard lines⁴, if, by dawdling as much as possible in coming in and taking their places, entering into long-winded explanations of what was the usual course of the regular master of the form, and others of the stock contrivances⁵ of boys for wasting time in school, they could not spin out the lesson so that he should not work them through more than the forty lines; as to which quantity there was a perpetual fight

¹ the grind, siehe S. 226.

² coach, wie crammer: Einpauser zum Examen, hier: Lehrer der Schule. Der bildliche Ausdruck wird fortgeführt in to go slow (a slow coach: ein Mölpeter, Hoppe) und to let us down easy: leicht absetzen (leicht durchlassen, Pfeffer).

³ *nem. con.*; *nemine contradicente*: ohne Widerspruch, einstimmig.

⁴ it would be hard lines: es müßte schlimm zugehen. Die Bedeutung von hard lines: ein schlimmes Loß, Ungemach, schließt sich an Psalm, 16, 6: The lines are fallen unto me in pleasant places, funes cediderunt mihi in praeclaris. Die Meßschnur fiel mir in lieblicher Gegend, und das Besitztum gefällt mir. De Bette.

⁵ stock contrivances: Kniffe, welche die Knaben vorrätig oder auf dem Lager haben. Vergl. S. 78: the stock questions.

going on between the master and his form, the
 240 latter insisting, and enforcing by passive resistance,
 that it was the prescribed quantity of Homer for a
 shell lesson, the former that there was no fixed
 quantity, but that they must always be ready to go
 on to fifty or sixty lines if there were time within
 the hour. However, notwithstanding all their efforts,
 the new master got on horribly quick; he seemed to
 have the bad taste to be really interested in the
 lesson, and to be trying to work them up into some-
 thing like appreciation of it, giving them good
 spirited English words, instead of the wretched bald
 stuff¹ into which they rendered poor old Homer;
 and construing over each piece himself to them, after
 each boy, to show them how it should be done.

Now the clock strikes the three-quarters; there is
 only a quarter of an hour more; but the forty lines
 are all but done. So the boys, one after another,
 who are called up, stick more and more, and make
 balder and ever more bald work of it. The poor
 young master is pretty near beat² by this time, and
 feels ready to knock his head against the wall, or
 his fingers against somebody else's head. So he
 gives up altogether the lower and middle parts of
 the form, and looks round in despair at the boys on
 the top bench, to see if there is one out of whom he
 can strike a spark or two, and who will be too
 chivalrous to murder the most beautiful utterances
 of the most beautiful woman of the world. His eye
 rests on Arthur, and he calls him up to finish con-
 struing Helen's speech. Whereupon all the other
 boys draw long breaths, and begin to stare about
 and take it easy. They are all safe; Arthur is
 the head of the form, and sure to be able to con-

¹ bald stuff: elendes Zeug; im folgenden to make bald work of something: etwas verhunzen. An die Bedeutung: schmutzlos, prosaisch, schließt sich an: jämmerlich, vom Stil gesagt.

² beat, beat out of countenance: außer Fassung gebracht.

strue, and that will tide on¹ safely till the hour strikes.

Arthur proceeds to read out the passage in Greek before construing it, as the custom is. Tom, who isn't paying much attention, is suddenly caught by the falter in his voice as he reads the two lines—

ἀλλὰ σὺ τὸν γ' ἐπέεσσι παραιφάμενος κατέρυκες,
Σῆ τ' ἀγανοφροσύνη καὶ σοῖς ἀγανοῖς ἐπέεσσιν². 241

He looks up at Arthur. "Why, bless us," thinks he, "what can be the matter with the young 'un? He's never going to get floored. He's sure to have learnt to the end." Next moment he is reassured by the spirited tone in which Arthur begins construing, and betakes himself to drawing dogs' heads in his note-book, while the master, evidently enjoying the change, turns his back on the middle bench and stands before Arthur, beating a sort of time with his hand and foot, and saying, "Yes, yes," "very well," as Arthur goes on.

But as he nears the fatal two lines, Tom catches that falter and again looks up. He sees that there is something the matter—Arthur can hardly get on at all. What can it be?

Suddenly at this point Arthur breaks down³ altogether, and fairly bursts out crying, and dashes cuff of his jacket across his eyes, blushing up to the roots of his hair, and feeling as if he should like to go down suddenly through the floor. The whole form are taken aback⁴; most of them stare stupidly at him, while those who are gifted with presence of mind find their places and look steadily at their books, in hopes of not catching the master's eye and getting called up in Arthur's place.

¹ to tide on: weiterfluten, weitergehen und dauern.

² Ilias 24, 771 f. Nach der Übersetzung von Voss:
Immer besänftigtest du und redestest immer zum guten
Durch dein freundliches Herz und deine freundlichen Worte.

³ breaks down: bricht zusammen. ⁴ taken aback: verblüfft.

The master looks puzzled for a moment, and then seeing, as the fact is, that the boy is really affected to tears by the most touching thing in Homer, perhaps in all profane poetry put together, steps up to him and lays his hand kindly on his shoulder, saying, "Never mind, my little man, you've construed very well. Stop a minute, there's no hurry."

Now, as luck would have it¹, there sat next above Tom that day, in the middle bench of the form, a
 242 big boy, by name Williams, generally supposed to be the cock² of the shell, therefore of all the school below the fifths. The small boys, who are great speculators on the prowess of their elders, used to hold forth³ to one another about William's great strength, and to discuss whether East or Brown would take a licking from him. He was called Slogger⁴ Williams, from the force with which it was supposed he could hit. In the main, he was a rough good-natured fellow enough, but very much alive to his own dignity. He reckoned himself the king of the form, and kept up his position with a strong hand⁵, especially in the matter of forcing boys not to construe more than the legitimate forty lines. He had already grunted and grumbled to himself, when Arthur went on reading beyond the forty lines. But now that he had broken down just in the middle of all the long words, the Slogger's wrath was fairly roused.

"Sneaking little brute," muttered he, regardless of prudence, "clapping on the waterworks⁶ just in

¹ as luck would have it. Vergl. S. 170.

² cock, siehe S. 83. The fifths: the first and the second division of the fifth. ³ to hold forth: vorprebigen.

⁴ Slogger: Klopffechter, Bauer. To slog, to beat or baste, to fight. Slang Dict.

⁵ with the (a) strong hand: durch Faustrecht. Mac. Hist. II, 146: In Scotland,—where he who did not right himself by the strong hand was not likely to be righted at all.

⁶ clapping on the waterworks: die Wasserleitung (Wasserleitung)

the hardest place; see if I don't punch his head after fourth lesson."

"Whose?" said Tom, to whom the remark seemed to be addressed.

"Why, that little sneak Arthur's," replied Williams.

"No, you shan't," said Tom.

"Hullo!" exclaimed Williams, looking at Tom with great surprise for a moment, and then giving him a sudden dig in the ribs¹ with his elbow, which sent Tom's books flying on the floor, and called the attention of the master, who turned suddenly round, and seeing the state of things, said—

"Williams, go down three places, and then go on."

The Slogger found his legs² very slowly, and proceeded to go below Tom and two other boys with great disgust, and then, turning round and facing the master, said, "I haven't learnt any more, sir; 243 our lesson is only forty lines."

"Is that so?" said the master, appealing generally to the top bench. No answer.

"Who is the head boy of the form?" said he, waxing wroth.

"Arthur, sir," answered three or four boys, indicating our friend.

"Oh, your name's Arthur. Well now, what is the length of your regular lesson?"

Arthur hesitated a moment, and then said, "We call it only forty lines, sir."

"How do you mean, you call it?"

"Well, sir, Mr. Graham says we ain't to stop there, when there's time to construe more."

"I understand," said the master. "Williams, go down three more places, and write me out the lesson

loslassen (in Bewegung setzen); scherzhafter Ausdruck für „plärren.“
To clap on all the (more) sails: alle (mehr) Segel beifegen.

¹ a dig in the ribs: ein Rippenstoß.

² found his legs very slowly: er hatte erst keine Beine, d. h. er rührte sich kaum.

in Greek and English. And now, Arthur, finish constructing."

"Oh! would I be in Arthur's shoes¹ after fourth lesson?" said the little boys to one another; but Arthur finished Helen's speech without any further catastrophe, and the clock struck four, which ended third lesson.

Another hour was occupied in preparing and saying fourth lesson, during which Williams was bottling up his wrath²; and when five struck, and the lessons for the day were over, he prepared to take summary vengeance on the innocent cause of his misfortune.

Tom was detained in school a few minutes after the rest, and on coming out into the quadrangle, the first thing he saw was a small ring of boys, applauding Williams, who was holding Arthur by the collar.

"There, you young sneak," said he, giving Arthur a cuff on the head with his other hand, "what made you say that?"—

244 "Hullo!" said Tom, shouldering³ into the crowd, "you drop that, Williams; you shan't touch him."

"Who'll stop me?" said the Slogger, raising his hand again.

"I," said Tom; and suiting the action to the word, struck the arm which held Arthur's arm so sharply, that the Slogger dropped it with a start, and turned the full current of his wrath on Tom.

"Will you fight?"

"Yes, of course."

"Huzza, there's going to be a fight between Slogger Williams and Tom Brown!"

¹ would I be in Arthur's shoes: ich möchte nicht an feiner Stelle sein, nicht in feiner Haut stehen, I would not be in his skin. To stand (walk) in the shoes of some one wird sonst auch gebraucht für to stand in the stead of some one: jemand vertreten.

² was bottling up his wrath: fraß seinen Zorn in sich, um ihn später auszulassen.

³ shouldering: sich hineinbrängend.

The news ran like wild-fire¹ about, and many boys who were on their way to tea at their several houses turned back, and sought the back of the chapel, where the fights come off².

"Just run and tell East to come and back³ me," said Tom to a small School-house boy, who was off like a rocket⁴ to Harrowell's, just stopping for a moment to poke⁵ his head into the School-house hall, where the lower boys were already at tea, and sing out⁶, "Fight! Tom Brown and Slogger Williams."

Up start half the boys at once, leaving bread, eggs, butter, sprats, and all the rest to take care of themselves. The greater part of the remainder follow in a minute, after swallowing their tea, carrying their food in their hands to consume as they go. Three or four only remain, who steal the butter of the more impetuous, and make to themselves an unctuous⁷ feast.

In another minute East and Martin tear through the quadrangle carrying a sponge, and arrive at the scene of action just as the combatants are beginning to strip.

Tom felt he had got his work cut out for him⁸,

¹ to run (spread) like wild-fire: sich wie ein Lauffeuer verbreiten; vom griechischen Feuer (wild-fire, Greek fire) hergenommen.

² to come off, oft kaum verschieden von to take place, obgleich immer mit einer Andeutung, daß etwas wirklich zustande kommt.

³ to back one: einem beim Faustkampf sekundieren; backer: der Sekundant.

⁴ off like a rocket: davon wie der Blitz; sonst auch to go off like a shot (quick as lightning, quick as an arrow).

⁵ to poke (in): hineinstecken.

⁶ to sing out: auffingen; vom Bootsmann oder von einem Matrosen gesagt, wenn er durch singenden Ausruf das Zeichen zu gleichzeitigem Anziehen eines Taues giebt. S. 247: "Now then, Tom," sings out East.

⁷ unctuous: üppig. Vergl. S. 56.

⁸ he had got his work cut out for him: es war ihm seine (gehörige) Aufgabe zuerteilt; vom Zuschneiden der Arbeit entlehnt.

245 as he stripped off his jacket, waistcoat, and braces. East tied his handkerchief round his waist, and rolled up his shirt-sleeves for him: "Now, old boy, don't you open your mouth to say a word, or try to help yourself a bit, we'll do all that; you keep all your breath and strength for the Slogger." Martin meanwhile folded the clothes, and put them under the chapel rails; and now Tom, with East to handle¹ him and Martin to give him a knee², steps out on the turf, and is ready for all that may come: and here is the Slogger too, all stripped, and thirsting for the fray.

It doesn't look a fair match at first glance: Williams is nearly two inches taller, and probably a long³ year older than his opponent, and he is very strongly made about the arms and shoulders; "peels well⁴," as the little knot of big fifth-form boys, the amateurs, say; who stand outside the ring of little boys, looking complacently on, but taking no active part in the proceedings. But down below he is not so good by any means; no spring⁵ from the loins, and feebleish, not to say shipwrecky, about the knees. Tom, on the contrary, though not half so strong in the arms, is good all over, straight, hard, and springy from neck to ankle, better perhaps in his legs than

Dick. Christm. Car. p. 47: with a good stiff piece of work cut out for them.

¹ to handle one: einem beim Faustkampf sekundieren; hander: der Sekundant.

² to give (offer) one a knee, von einem der beiden Sekundanten gesagt, der nach Beendigung jedes Ganges (round) sich auf ein Knie niederläßt, um das andere hochstehende seinem Kämpfer als Sitz zum Ausruhen während der gestatteten Minute Pause zu bieten. Hoppe. The turf, sonst von der Rennbahn, hier vom Kampfplatz.

³ a long year: ein volles Jahr.

⁴ peels well: er schält sich leichtig heraus, d. h. beim Entkleiden (peeling = stripping) zeigt sich ein kräftiger Körperbau.

⁵ spring: Schnelligkeit; im folgenden Tom—is good all over, sraight, hard, and springy from neck to ankle. Vergl. S. 74: he goes from his hips.

anywhere. Besides, you can see by the clear white of his eye and fresh bright look of his skin, that he is in tip-top training¹, able to do all he knows; while the Slogger looks rather sodden², as if he didn't take much exercise and ate too much tuck³. The time-keeper⁴ is chosen, a large ring made, and the two stand up opposite one another for a moment, giving us time just to make our little observations.

"If Tom'll only condescend to fight with his head and heels," as East mutters to Martin, "we shall do."

But seemingly he won't, for there he goes in, making play⁵ with both hands. Hard all, is the word⁶; the two stand to one another like men; rally⁷ follows rally in quick succession, each fighting as if ²⁴⁶ he thought to finish the whole thing out of hand. "Can't last at this rate," say the knowing ones, while the partisans of each make the air ring with their shouts and counter-shouts, of encouragement, approval, and defiance.

"Take it easy, take it easy—keep away, let him come after you," implores East, as he wipes Tom's face after the first round with wet sponge, while he sits back on Martin's knee, supported by the Madman's long arms, which tremble a little from excitement.

"Time's up⁸," calls the time-keeper.

¹ in tip-top training, siehe S. 161.

² sodden: schwammig; vom durchnässten Boden (a sodden soil) hergenommen.

³ tuck, siehe S. 98.

⁴ The time-keeper: der Unparteiische, so genannt, weil er mit der Uhr in der Hand die Pausen abmisst.

⁵ making play, siehe S. 126.

⁶ Hard all, is the word: fest drauf! ist die Losung. Hard all (alle Mann in die Riemen, Pfeffer), Kommando zur stärksten Anstrengung beim Rudern. Hoppe. Hard wird auf der See viel gebraucht, z. B. hard a lee: hält dicht beim Wind, hold hard = stop.

⁷ rally: ein frischer Anlauf oder Angriff, eigentlich nach Sammlung der Kraft, wie S. 251: a short rally at close quarters.

⁸ Time's up: siehe S. 66.

"There he goes again, hang it all!" growls East as his man is at it again as hard as ever¹. A very severe round follows, in which Tom gets out and out the worst of it, and is at last hit clean off his legs, and deposited on the grass by a right-hander² from the Slogger.

Loud shouts rise from the boys of Slogger's house, and the School-house are silent and vicious³, ready to pick quarrels anywhere.

"Two to one⁴ in half-crowns on the big 'un," says Rattle, one of the amateurs, a tall fellow, in thunder-and-lightning⁵ waistcoat, and puffy, good-natured face.

"Done!" says Groove, another amateur of quieter look, taking out his note-book to enter it—for our friend Rattle sometimes forgets these little things.

Meantime East is freshening up Tom with the sponges for next round, and has set two other boys to rub his hands.

"Tom, old boy," whispers he, "this may be fun for you, but it's death to me⁶. He'll hit all the fight out of you in another five minutes, and then I shall go and drown myself in the island ditch. Feint him—use your legs!—draw him about! he'll lose his wind then in no time, and you can go into him. Hit at his body too; we'll take care of his frontispiece⁷ by and by."

¹ as his man is at it again as hard as ever: indem sein Pausant wieder ebenso heftig darauf los geht.

² a right-hander: ein Schlag mit der Rechten; S. 250: by some heavy right-handed blow.

³ vicious: tödtlich, eigentlich von Pferden gesagt.

⁴ Two to one, etc.: ich wette zwei halbe Kronen gegen eine auf den Großen. Die Antwort lautet done, topp, es gilt. Rattle erinnert an to rattle away: ins Gelag hineinsprechen.

⁵ thunder-and-lightning: Pfeffer und Salz, schwarz und weiß geprenkelt.

⁶ fun for you, but death to me. In der Fabel The Boys and the Frogs sagt ein Frosch zu den mutwillig mit Steinen werfenden Knaben: Though this may be sport to you, it is death to us.

⁷ frontispiece: Gesicht; gehört zu den in Bell's Life in London

Tom felt the wisdom of the counsel, and saw ²⁴⁷ already that he couldn't go in and finish the Slogger off at mere hammer and tongs¹, so changed his tactics completely in the third round. He now fights cautious, getting away from and parrying the Slogger's lunging hits², instead of trying to counter, and leading his enemy a dance all round the ring after him. "He's funk³; go in, Williams," "Catch him up," "Finish him off," scream the small boys of the Slogger party.

"Just what we want," thinks East, chuckling to himself, as he sees Williams, excited by these shouts, and thinking the game in his own hands, blowing himself in his exertions to get to close quarters⁴ again, while Tom is keeping away with perfect ease.

They quarter over the ground⁵ again and again, Tom always on the defensive.

The Slogger pulls up at last for a moment, fairly blown⁶.

"Now then, Tom," sings out East, dancing with delight. Tom goes in in a twinkling, and hits two heavy body blows, and gets away again before the Slogger can catch his wind; which when he does he rushes with blind fury at Tom, and being skilfully

üblichen Wendungen, wie z. B. auch tapping the Falernian für drawing blood. We'll take care: indem der Sekundant sich mit dem Paufanten identifiziert, wie S. 248: we've got the last.

¹ at mere hammer and tongs: mit bloß physischen Kraftmitteln.

² to lunge: ausfallen, the lunge: der Ausfall; ein Gedächtnisdruck; daneben werden auch die Formen lounge, longe mit derselben Aussprache (ü) gebraucht.

³ He's funk³: er kneift, hat Sch—.

⁴ close quarters, oft vom Fassen des Gegners, hier vom Handgemeinwerden im Gegensatz zu Finten.

⁵ They quarter over the ground, wie S. 250: sie schreiten über den Kampfplatz.

⁶ fairly blown: gehörig außer Atem; kurz vorher blowing himself.

parried and avoided, over-reaches himself¹ and falls on his face, amidst terrific cheers from the School-house boys.

"Double² your two to one?" says Groove to Rattle, note-book in hand.

"Stop a bit," says that hero, looking uncomfortably at Williams, who is puffing away on his second's knee, winded³ enough, but little the worse in any other way.

After another round the Slogger too seems to see that he can't go in and win right off, and has met his match or thereabouts. So he too begins to use his head, and tries to make Tom lose patience
248 and come in before his time. And so the fight sways on⁴, now one, and now the other, getting a trifling pull⁵.

Tom's face begins to look very one-sided—there are little queer bumps on his forehead, and his mouth is bleeding; but East keeps the wet sponge going so scientifically⁶, that he comes up looking as fresh and bright as ever. Williams is only slightly marked in the face, but by the nervous movement of his elbows you can see that Tom's body blows are telling. In fact, half the vice⁷ of the Slogger's hitting is neutralized, for he daren't lunge out freely for fear of exposing his sides. It is too interesting by this time for much shouting, and the whole ring is very quiet.

¹ over-reaches himself: überstürzt sich und stolpert. To over-reach, von Pferden: in die Eisen hauen.

² Double: will you double?

³ winded: außer Atem, hergenommen von to wind a horse, was sowohl heißt: außer Atem jagen, als: sich verschmaufen lassen.

⁴ the fight sways on: der Kampf schwankt weiter von einer Seite zur andern. ⁵ a pull, siehe S. 116.

⁶ scientifically: systematisch, kunstfertig. S. 253: the lovers of the science (of fighting).

⁷ vice, eigentlich die Lücke (vicious, S. 246): die bössartige Wucht der Schläge; einfach: ihre Kraft.

"All right, Tommy," whispers East; "hold on's¹ the horse that's to win. We've got the last. Keep your head, old boy."

But where is Arthur all this time? Words cannot paint the poor little fellow's distress. He couldn't muster courage to come up to the ring, but wandered up and down from the great fives'-court to the corner of the chapel rails. Now trying to make up his mind to throw himself between them, and try to stop them; then thinking of running in and telling his friend Mary, who he knew would instantly report to the Doctor. The stories he had heard of men being killed in prize-fights rose up horribly before him.

Once only, when the shouts of "Well done, Brown!" "Huzza for the School-house!" rose higher than ever, he ventured up to the ring, thinking the victory was won. Catching sight of Tom's face in the state I have described, all fear of consequences vanishing out of his mind, he rushed straight off to the matron's room, beseeching her to get the fight stopped, or he should die.

But it's time for us to get back to the close. What is this fierce tumult and confusion? The ring is broken, and high and angry words are being ²⁴⁹ bandied² about; "It's all fair,"—"It isn't,"—"No hugging;" the fight is stopped. The combatants, however, sit there quietly, tended by their seconds,

¹ hold on! halt an! nicht zu hitzig! Der Sinn der sprichwörtlichen Wendung ist: Schonung der Kräfte verbürgt den Sieg. Hold on dürfte Imperativ sein; ebenso in den Sprichwörtern bear and forbear is good philosophy, let alane maks mony a loon. Doch kommt auch der altertümliche Infinitiv ohne to vor. Shak. John, I, 1, 173: Have is have. T. Brown at Oxf. Ch. 2: That it is henceforth to be all give and no take. Ch. 41: It was touch and go.

² bandied. Der Ausdruck stammt her von dem alten Spiel bandy oder bandy-ball, in welchem beide Parteien einen Ball mit unten gekrümmten Stäben (bandies) nach einander gegenüberstehenden Zielen schlugen.

while their adherents wrangle in the middle. East can't help shouting challenges to two or three of the other side, though he never leaves Tom for a moment, and plies the sponges as fast as ever.

The fact is, that at the end of the last round, Tom seeing a good opening, had closed with¹ his opponent, and after a moment's struggle had thrown him heavily, by the help of the fall he had learnt from his village rival in the vale of White Horse. Williams hadn't the ghost of a chance² with Tom at wrestling; and the conviction broke at once on the Slogger faction, that if this were allowed their man must be licked³. There was a strong feeling in the school against catching hold and throwing, though it was generally ruled all fair⁴ within certain limits; so the ring was broken and the fight stopped.

The School-house are over-ruled—the fight is on again, but there is to be no throwing; and East in high wrath threatens to take his man away after next round (which he don't mean to do, by the way), when suddenly young Brooke comes through the small gate at the end of the chapel. The School-house faction rush to him. "Oh, hurra! now we shall get fair play."

"Please, Brooke, come up, they won't let Tom Brown throw him."

"Throw whom?" says Brooke, coming up to the ring. "Oh! Williams, I see. Nonsense! of course he may throw him if he catches him fairly above the waist."

Now, young Brooke, you're in the sixth, you

¹ to close with: sich fassen mit. Vergl. S. 247: close quarters. Fall, siehe S. 51.

² not the ghost (no ghost) of a chance: kein Schimmer (keine Spur) von Aussicht auf Sieg, slang.

³ licked, beaten, besonders Schulausdruck.

⁴ ruled all fair: für ganz zulässig erklärt. To rule von den Erklärungen eines Gerichtshofs; vergl. to overrule: überstimmen, im folgenden.

know, and you ought to stop all fights. He looks hard at¹ both boys. "Anything wrong?" says he to East, nodding at Tom.

"Not a bit."

"Not beat at all?"

250

"Bless you, no! heaps of fight in him. Ain't there, Tom?"

Tom looks at Brooke and grins.

"How's he?" nodding at Williams.

"So, so; rather done², I think, since his last fall. He won't stand above two more."

"Time's up!" the boys rise again and face one another. Brooke can't find it in his heart to stop them just yet, so the round goes on, the Slogger waiting for Tom, and reserving all his strength to hit him out should he come in for the wrestling dodge again, for he feels that that must be stopped, or his sponge will soon go up in the air³.

And now another new comer appears on the field, to wit, the under-porter, with his long brush and great wooden receptacle for dust under his arm. He has been sweeping out the schools.

"You'd better stop, gentlemen," he says; "the Doctor knows that Brown's fighting—he'll be out in a minute."

"You go to Bath⁴, Bill," is all that that excellent servitor gets by his advice. And being a man of his hands⁵, and a staunch upholder of the School-

¹ to look hard at: *scharf ansehen*.

² done: fertig, es geht mit ihm zu Ende. Noch stärker ist done up.

³ his sponge will soon go up in the air: er muß sich für besiegt erklären. Die Niederlage wird anerkannt, indem der Sekundant den Schwamm, mit dem er bis dahin das Gesicht seines Kämpfers gereinigt hat, als überflüssig in die Luft wirft.

⁴ You go to Bath: geh' du hin, wo der Pfeffer wächst, geh' zum Fenster. (Ab nach Rassel!) Sonst go to Jericho. (I wish you were in Jericho, to send to Jericho.)

⁵ a man of his hands: ein Mann, der sich auf seine Hände verlassen kann, ein tüchtiger Faustkämpfer. Hoppe.

house, can't help stopping to look on for a bit, and see Tom Brown, their pet craftsman¹, fight a round.

It is grim earnest now, and no mistake. Both boys feel this, and summon every power of head, hand, and eye to their aid. A piece of luck on either side, a foot slipping, a blow getting well home², or another fall, may decide it. Tom works slowly round for an opening; he has all the legs³, and can choose his own time: the Slogger waits for the attack, and hopes to finish it by some heavy right-handed blow. As they quarter slowly over the ground, the evening sun comes out from behind a cloud and falls full on William's face. Tom darts in; 251 the heavy right-hand is delivered, but only grazes his head. A short rally at close quarters⁴, and they close; in another moment the Slogger is thrown again heavily for the third time.

"I'll give you three to two on the little one in half-crowns," said Groove to Rattle.

"No, thank'ee," answers the other, diving his hands further into his coat-tails.

Just at this stage of the proceedings, the door of the turret which leads to the Doctor's library suddenly opens, and he steps into the close, and makes straight for the ring, in which Brown and the Slogger are both seated on their seconds' knees for the last time.

"The Doctor! the Doctor!" shouts some small boy who catches sight of him, and the ring melts away in a few seconds, the small boys tearing off, Tom collaring his jacket and waistcoat, and slipping

¹ their pet craftsman: ihr Hauptmüder; craftsman: der Mann vom Fach, hier Boger.

² a blow getting well home: ein Schlag, der den rechten Fleck trifft. Vergl. S. 94.

³ he has all the legs: er hat den Vorteil der Beine, der Schnelligkeit.

⁴ A short rally at close quarters, siehe S. 245, At: total, nicht Bezeichnung des Ziels.

through the little gate by the chapel, and round the corner to Harrowell's with his backers, as lively as need be; Williams and his backers making off not quite so fast across the close; Groove, Rattle, and the other bigger fellows trying to combine dignity and prudence in a comical manner, and walking off fast enough, they hope, not to be recognised, and not fast enough to look like running away.

Young Brooke alone remains on the ground by the time the Doctor gets there, and touches his hat¹, not without a slight inward qualm.

"Hah! Brooke. I am surprised to see you here. Don't you know that I expect the sixth to stop fighting?"

Brooke felt much more uncomfortable than he had expected, but he was rather a favourite with the Doctor for his openness and plainness of speech; so blurted out, as he walked by the Doctor's side, who had already turned back—

"Yes, sir, generally. But I thought you wished us to exercise a discretion in the matter too—not to²⁵² interfere too soon."

"But they have been fighting this half-hour and more," said the Doctor.

"Yes, sir; but neither was hurt. And they're the sort of boys who'll be all the better friends now, which they wouldn't have been if they had been stopped any earlier—before it was so equal."

"Who was fighting with Brown?" said the Doctor.

"Williams, sir, of Thompson's². He is bigger than Brown, and had the best of it at first, but not when you came up, sir. There's a good deal of jealousy between our house and Thompson's, and

¹ touches his hat: faßt an den Hut, üblicher Gruß auf der Schule. Sonst faßt man beim Grüßen von Herren nicht einmal an den Hut und nimmt denselben nur vor Damen ab.

² Thompson's (house): Pensionat unter Leitung eines Lehrers dieses Namens.

there would have been more fights if this hadn't been let go on, or if either of them had had much the worst of it."

"Well but, Brooke," said the Doctor, "doesn't this look a little as if you exercised your discretion by only stopping a fight when the School-house boy is getting the worst of it?"

Brooke, it must be confessed, felt rather gravelled¹.

"Remember," added the Doctor, as he stopped at the turret-door, "this fight is not to go on—you'll see to that. And I expect you to stop all fights in future at once."

"Very well, sir," said young Brooke, touching his hat, and not sorry to see the turret-door close behind the Doctor's back.

Meantime Tom and the staunchest of his adherents had reached Harrowell's, and Sally was bustling about to get them a late tea, while Stumps had been sent off to Tew the butcher, to get a piece of raw beef² for Tom's eye, which was to be healed off-hand, so that he might show well in the morning. He was not a bit the worse except a slight difficulty in his vision, a singing in his ears, and a sprained
 253 thumb, which he kept in a cold-water bandage, while he drank lots of tea, and listened to the Babel of voices talking and speculating of nothing but the fight, and how Williams would have given in after another fall (which he didn't in the least believe), and how on earth the Doctor could have got to know of it,—such bad luck! He couldn't help thinking to himself that he was glad he hadn't won; he liked it better as it was, and felt very friendly to the Slogger. And then poor little Arthur crept in and sat down quietly near him, and kept looking at him

¹ gravelled: auf den Sand gesetzt. Riedl. Vom wirklichen Hin-
 strecken übertragen auf: Verletzung in Verlegenheit.

² raw beef. Rohes Rindfleisch wird auf Quetschungen und
 Beulen gelegt.

and the raw beef with such plaintive looks, that Tom at last burst out laughing.

"Don't make such eyes, young 'un," said he, "there's nothing the matter."

"Oh but, Tom, are you much hurt? I can't bear thinking it was all for me."

"Not a bit of it, don't flatter yourself. We were sure to have had it out¹ sooner or later."

"Well, but you won't go on, will you? You'll promise me you won't go on?"

"Can't tell about that—all depends on the houses. We're in the hands of our countrymen², you know. Must fight for the School-house flag, if so be."

However, the lovers of the science were doomed to disappointment this time. Directly after locking-up one of the night fags knocked at Tom's door.

"Brown, young Brooke wants you in the sixth-form room."

Up went Tom to the summons, and found the magnates sitting at their supper.

"Well, Brown," said young Brooke, nodding to him, "how do you feel?"

"Oh, very well, thank you, only I've sprained my thumb, I think."

"Sure to do that in a fight. Well, you hadn't²⁵⁴ the worst of it, I could see. Where did you learn that throw?"

"Down in the country, when I was a boy."

"Hullo! why what are you now? Well, never mind, you're a plucky fellow. Sit down and have some supper."

Tom obeyed, by no means loth. And the fifth-

¹ to have it out (with one): etwas ausmachen, sei es durch rüchhaltiges Aussprechen, oder durch Kampf. Der Infinitiv der Vergangenheit (to have had), weil das verbum finitum sein würde we should have had it out.

² We're in the hands of our countrymen: großsprecherisch, die Entscheidung steht bei denen, welche wir vertreten.

form boy next him filled him a tumbler of bottled-beer, and he ate and drank, listening to the pleasant talk, and wondering how soon he should be in the fifth, and one of that much-envied society.

As he got up to leave, Brooke said, "You must shake hands¹ to-morrow morning; I shall come and see that done after first lesson."

And so he did. And Tom and the Slogger shook hands with great satisfaction and mutual respect. And for the next year or two, whenever fights were being talked of, the small boys who had been present shook their heads wisely, saying, "Ah! but you should just have seen the fight between Slogger Williams and Tom Brown!"

And now, boys all, three words before we quit the subject. I have put in this chapter on fighting of malice prepense², partly because I want to give you a true picture of what every-day school life was in my time, and not a kid-glove and go-to-meeting-coat picture³; and partly because of the cant⁴ and twaddle that's talked of boxing and fighting with fists now-a-days. Even Thackeray has given in to it; and only a few weeks ago there was some rampant⁵ stuff in the *Times* on the subject, in an article on field sports.

¹ shake hands: Zeichen, daß die Kämpfer die Sache als beigelegt ansehen und keinen Groll mehr gegen einander hegen. Auch nach Studentenmensuren pflegen sich die Pausanten die Hand zu geben.

² of malice prepense: mit Vorbedacht, oft gebraucht wie of one's own accord, eigentlich von böswilligem Vorbedacht, insbesondere von Mordschlag mit Vorbedacht.

³ a kid-glove and go-to-meeting-coat picture: ein Bild von Leuten in Frack und in Glacehandschuhen. Vergl. S. 77: his go-to-meeting roof, S. 276: a go-to-meeting shop.

⁴ cant, wahrscheinlich vom lateinischen cantare und vom weinerlichen Ton des Bettlers hergenommen, bezeichnet sowohl das Rotwelsch der Zigeuner und die Gaunersprache, als andererseits den Jargon der Frömmeler.

⁵ rampant: übertrieben und darum unsinnig. Die Adjectiva auf -ant sind besonders gebräuchlich in der Heraldik; a lion rampant: ein

Boys will quarrel, and when they quarrel will sometimes fight. Fighting with fists is the natural and English way for English boys to settle their quarrels. What substitute for it is there, or ever was there, amongst any nation under the sun? What would you like to see take its place?

Learn to box, then, as you learn to play cricket and football. Not one of you will be the worse, but ²⁵⁵ very much the better for learning to box well. Should you never have to use it in earnest, there's no exercise in the world so good for the temper, and for the muscles of the back and legs.

As to fighting, keep out of it if you can, by all means. When the time comes, if it ever should, that you have to say "Yes" or "No" to a challenge to fight, say "No" if you can,—only take care you make it clear to yourselves why you say "No." It's a proof of the highest courage, if done from true Christian motives. It's quite right and justifiable, if done from a simple aversion to physical pain and danger. But don't say "No" because you fear a licking, and say or think it's because you fear God, for that's neither Christian nor honest. And if you do fight, fight it out; and don't give in while you can stand and see.

auffsteigender Löwe, wie andererseits a lion passant, couchant, dormant, regardant.

Chapter VI.

Fever in the School.

"This our hope for all that's mortal,
And we too shall burst the bond;
Death keeps watch beside the portal,
But 'tis life that dwells beyond."

JOHN STERLING¹.

Two years have passed since the events recorded in the last chapter, and the end of the summer half-year is again drawing on. Martin has left and gone on a cruise in the South Pacific, in one of his uncle's ships; the old magpie, as disreputable as ever, his last bequest to Arthur, lives in the joint study. Arthur is nearly sixteen, and is at the head of the twenty², having gone up the school at the rate of a form a half-year. East and Tom have been much more deliberate in their progress, and are only a little
 256 way up the fifth form. Great strapping boys they are, but still thorough boys, filling about the same place in the House that young Brooke filled when they were new boys, and much the same sort of fellows. Constant intercourse with Arthur has done much for both of them, especially for Tom; but much remains yet to be done, if they are to get all the good out of Rugby which is to be got there in these times. Arthur is still frail and delicate, with more spirit than body; but, thanks to his intimacy with them and Martin, has learned to swim, and run, and play cricket, and has never hurt himself by too much reading.

One evening, as they were all sitting down to

¹ Die Verse finden sich in einem Gedicht Abeldard to Heloise (S. 209) der 1839 erschienenen Sammlung Poems by John Sterling. Der Dichter (1806—1844) hat außerdem einen Roman Arthur Coningsby, ein längeres satirisches Gedicht The Election und eine Tragödie Strafford verfaßt. Nach seinem Tode sind Essays und Tales von ihm erschienen. Thomas Carlyle, Life of John Sterling. 1851.

² the twenty, siehe Einleitung S. XXII.

supper in the fifth-form room, some one started a report¹ that a fever had broken out at one of the boarding-houses; "they say," he added, "that Thompson is very ill, and that Dr. Robertson has been sent for from Northampton²."

"Then we shall all be sent home," cried another. "Hurrah! five weeks' extra holidays, and no fifth-form examination!"

"I hope not," said Tom; "there'll be no Marylebone match³ then at the end of the half."

Some thought one thing, some another, many didn't believe the report; but the next day, Tuesday, Dr. Robertson arrived, and stayed all day, and had long conferences with the Doctor.

On Wednesday morning, after prayers, the Doctor addressed the whole School. There were several cases of fever in different houses, he said; but Dr. Robertson, after the most careful examination, had assured him that it was not infectious, and that if proper care were taken, there could be no reason for stopping the school work at present. The examinations were just coming on, and it would be very unadvisable to break-up now. However, any boys who chose to do so were at liberty to write home, and, if their parents wished it, to leave at once. He ²⁵⁷ should send the whole School home if the fever spread.

¹ to start a report: ein Gerücht aufbringen, eine Nachricht verbreiten.

² Northampton, die Kreisstadt der Grafschaft Northamptonshire, 66 englische Meilen nordwestlich von London und ungefähr 20 südwestlich von Rugby, hatte zu der Zeit, als nach der Erzählung das Fieber in der Schule ausbrach, etwas über 21000 Einwohner. Wegen der außerordentlichen Gefahr wurde ein bedeutender Arzt aus der Ferne konsultiert.

³ Marylebone match, eine Cricket-Partie gegen den Marylebone Cricket Club, so genannt von einem Stadtteil Londons mit der Kirche Marylebone (eigentlich Mary le bourne); derselbe grenzt südlich an Westminster und östlich an Finsbury an. Der Klub ist im Besitz von Lord's Cricket Ground, wo täglich Spiele stattfinden, und gilt als höchste Autorität in betreff der Regeln des Spiels. Mitglieder des Klubs nehmen häufig an Partien in anderen Gegenden des Landes teil.

The next day Arthur sickened, but there was no other case. Before the end of the week thirty or forty boys had gone, but the rest stayed on. There was a general wish to please the Doctor, and a feeling that it was cowardly to run away.

On the Saturday Thompson died, in the bright afternoon, while the cricket-match was going on as usual on the big-side ground¹: the Doctor coming from his death-bed, passed along the gravel-walk at the side of the close, but no one knew what had happened till the next day. At morning lecture it began to be rumoured, and by afternoon chapel was known generally; and a feeling of seriousness and awe at the actual presence of death among them came over the whole School. In all the long years of his ministry the Doctor perhaps never spoke words which sank deeper than some of those in that day's sermon. "When I came yesterday from visiting all but the very death-bed of him who has been taken from us, and looked around upon all the familiar objects and scenes within our own ground, where your common amusements were going on, with your common cheerfulness and activity, I felt there was nothing painful in witnessing that; it did not seem in any way shocking or out of tune with² those feelings which the sight of a dying Christian must be supposed to awaken. The unsuitableness in point of natural feeling between scenes of mourning and scenes of liveliness did not at all present itself. But I did feel that if at that moment any of those faults had been brought before me which sometimes occur amongst us; had I heard that any of you had been guilty of falsehood, or of drunkenness, or of any other such sin; had I heard from any quarter the language of profaneness, or of unkindness, or of indecency;

¹ the big-side ground, siehe S. 95.

² out of tune with: im Mißklang mit.

had I heard or seen any signs of that wretched folly 258 which courts¹ the laugh of fools by affecting not to dread evil and not to care for good, then the unsuitableness of any of these things with the scene I had just quitted would indeed have been most intensely painful. And why? Not because such things would really have been worse than at any other time, but because at such a moment the eyes are opened really to know good and evil, because we then feel what it is so to live as that death² becomes an infinite blessing, and what it is so to live also, that it were good for us if we had never been born."

Tom had gone into chapel in sickening anxiety about Arthur, but he came out cheered and strengthened by those grand words, and walked up alone to their study. And when he sat down and looked round, and saw Arthur's straw-hat and cricket-jacket hanging on their pegs, and marked all his little neat arrangements, not one of which had been disturbed, the tears indeed rolled down his cheeks; but they were calm and blessed tears, and he repeated to himself, "Yes, Geordie's³ eyes are opened—he knows what it is so to live as that death becomes an infinite blessing. But do I? Oh, God, can I bear to lose him?"

The week passed mournfully away. No more boys sickened, but Arthur was reported worse each day, and his mother arrived early in the week. Tom made many appeals to be allowed to see him, and several times tried to get up to the sick-room; but the housekeeper was always in the way, and at last spoke to the Doctor, who kindly, but peremptorily, forbade him.

Thompson was buried on the Tuesday; and the

¹ to court: zu gewinnen suchen.

² so to live as that death; as entspricht dem so, ist aber überflüssig vor that.

³ Geordie, neben Georgie, Georgy, Roseform für George.

burial service, so soothing and grand always, but beyond all words solemn when read over a boy's grave to his companions, brought him much comfort, and many strange new thoughts and longings. He
 259 went back to his regular life, and played cricket and bathed as usual: it seemed to him that this was the right thing to do, and the new thoughts and longings became more brave and healthy for the effort. The crisis came on Saturday, the day week that Thompson had died; and during that long afternoon Tom sat in his study reading his Bible and going every half-hour to the housekeeper's room, expecting each time to hear that the gentle and brave little spirit had gone home. But God had work for Arthur to do¹: the crisis passed—on Sunday evening he was declared out of danger; on Monday he sent a message to Tom that he was almost well, had changed his room, and was to be allowed to see him the next day.

It was evening when the housekeeper summoned him to the sick-room. Arthur was lying on the sofa by the open window, through which the rays of the western sun stole gently, lighting up his white face and golden hair. Tom remembered a German picture of an angel which he knew; often had he thought how transparent and golden and spirit-like it was; and he shuddered to think how like it Arthur looked, and felt a shock as if his blood had all stopped short, as he realized how near the other world his friend must have been to look like that. Never till that moment had he felt how his little chum had twined himself round his heartstrings²; and as he stole gently across

¹ God had work for Arthur to do. Goethe, *Iphigenie*, II, 1: Die Götter brauchen manchen guten Mann zu ihrem Dienst auf dieser weiten Erde.

² heartstrings: die Fibern des Herzens, ist ein Shakespearescher Ausdruck (Gent. IV, 2, 62: he grieves my very heartstrings); obwohl die sonst nicht ungewöhnliche Verbindung, to cut the heartstrings: ins Herz einschneiden, sich bei Shakespeare nicht findet.

the room and knelt down, and put his arm round Arthur's head on the pillow, he felt ashamed and half angry at his own red and brown face, and the bounding¹ sense of health and power which filled every fibre of his body, and made every movement of mere living a joy to him. He needn't have troubled himself; it was this very strength and power so different from his own which drew Arthur so to him.

Arthur laid his thin white hand, on which the blue veins stood out so plainly, on Tom's great brown fist, and smiled at him; and then looked out of the window again, as if he couldn't bear to lose a moment of the sunset, into the tops of the great feathery elms, round which the rooks were circling and clanging², returning in flocks from their evening's foraging parties. The elms rustled, the sparrows in the ivy just outside the window chirped and fluttered about, quarrelling and making it up³ again; the rooks young and old talked in chorus; and the merry shouts of the boys, and the sweet click of the cricket-bats, came up cheerily from below.

"Dear George," said Tom, "I am so glad to be let up to see you at last. I've tried hard to come so often, but they wouldn't let me⁴ before."

"Oh, I know, Tom; Mary has told me every day about you, and how she was obliged to make the Doctor speak to you to keep you away. I'm very glad you didn't get up, for you might have caught it⁵, and you couldn't stand being ill with all the matches going on. And you're in the eleven⁶ too, I hear—I'm so glad."

Vergl. Wall. Tod, III, 18: Ein Liebesnetz hab' ich um dich gesponnen; Zerreiß' es, wenn du kannst. ¹ bounding: lebhaft und heiter.

² clanging (cawing): krächzend.

³ to make it up: es wieder gut machen, sich wieder vertragen.

⁴ let me: let me come.

⁵ to catch it, nicht wie S. 22, sondern to catch the contagion.

⁶ the eleven: die elf Haupt-Cricketspieler der Schule.

"Yes, ain't it jolly?" said Tom proudly; "I'm ninth too. I made forty at the last pie-match¹ and caught three fellows out. So I was put in above Jones and Tucker. Tucker's so savage², for he was head of the twenty-two³."

"Well, I think you ought to be higher yet," said Arthur, who was as jealous for the renown of Tom in games, as Tom was for his as a scholar.

"Never mind, I don't care about cricket or anything now you're getting well, Geordie; and I shouldn't have hurt, I know, if they'd have let me come up,—nothing hurts me⁴. But you'll get about now directly, won't you? You won't believe how clean I've kept the study. All your things are just as you left them; and I feed the old magpie just when you used, though I have to come in from big-side for him, the old rip⁵. He won't look pleased all I can
261 do⁶, and sticks his head first on one side and then on the other, and blinks at me before he'll begin to eat, till I'm half inclined to box his ears. And whenever East comes in, you should see him hop off to the window, dot and go one⁷, though Harry wouldn't touch a feather of him now."

¹ pie-match, gespielt um ein Frühstück beim Konditor, das die Partei, welche verloren hat, bezahlen muß, wohl nur in Rugby üblich. Caught out; ein Schläger ist out, wenn einer der Gegenpartei seinen Ball fängt.

² savage: fuchswild, wüthenb.

³ the twenty-two: eine Gesellschaft, die an Rang unmittelbar hinter den Eleven steht. Sie bilden eine ungetheilte Gesamtheit und tragen jetzt beim Cricketspiel eine dunkelblaue Flanellmütze, während die der Eleven hellblau ist. ⁴ nothing hurts me: nichts schadet mich an; von Ansteckung. Unmittelbar vorher I shouldn't have hurt, intransitiv: ich hätte nichts abbekommen, es hätte mir nicht geschadet.

⁵ the old rip: der alte Sünder, abgeführt aus reprobate.

⁶ all I can do: was ich auch thun mag, whatever I do.

⁷ dot and go one. Ingoldsby Leg. Lay of St. Nicholas. Limping 'dot and go one.' Zu limping ist dot and go one, wie in unserer Stelle zu hop off, als Erklärung, eigentlich im Imperativ, hinzugefügt, = so as to dot and go one. Dot and go one allein bezeichnet schon einen Humpelnden, dessen Gang noch charakteristischer bei

Arthur laughed. "Old Gravey¹ has a good memory; he can't forget the sieges of poor Martin's den in old times." He paused a moment, and then went on. "You can't think how often I've been thinking of old Martin since I've been ill; I suppose one's mind gets restless, and likes to wander off to strange unknown places. I wonder what queer new pets the old boy has got; how he must be revelling in the thousand new birds, beasts, and fishes."

Tom felt a pang of jealousy, but kicked it out in a moment. "Fancy him on a South-Sea island, with the Cherokees² or Patagonians, or some such wild niggers;" (Tom's ethnology and geography were faulty, but sufficient for his needs;) "they'll make the old Madman cock medicine-man³ and tattoo him all over. Perhaps he's cutting about⁴ now all blue, and has a squaw and a wigwam. He'll improve their boomerangs⁵, and be able to throw them too, without having old Thomas sent after him by the Doctor to take them away."

Arthur laughed at the remembrance of the

einem Stelzfuß hervortritt. Der Stelzfuß macht jedesmal einen festen Punkt, daß andere Bein bewegt sich weiter; so folgt beim Humpeln dem Tritt (einem festen Auftritt) ein Schritt (weiter vorwärts). Uns ist vielleicht (statt Tritt und Schritt) eine andere bildliche Ausdrucksweise bequemer: im Zambustatt, kurz, lang. Der Gebrauch von dot and go (carry) one beim Rechnen hat mit dem hier vorliegenden nichts zu thun.

¹ Old Gravey: der alte Ehrpuffel, die Elster, freie Bildung von grave, wie S. 262, blackies: schwarze Gefellen, S. 113: Whitey Brown. Vergl. brownie (der Kobold), dummy, ninny u. dergl.

² the Cherokees. Die Cherokees zu beiden Seiten der Apalachen werden von Tom (whose ethnology and geography were faulty) ergötzt mit Patagoniern und Negeren zusammengeworfen.

³ cock medicine-man: Haupt-Zauber-Doktor (Pflasterkasten). Über den medicine-man, der bei den Indianern in Nordamerika Arzt und Zauberer in einer Person ist, vergl. die Schilderung von Bancroft, the Aborigines of America, in Herrig's Brit. Class. Auth. p. 670. 59th ed. Über cock siehe S. 83.

⁴ cutting about, siehe S. 101; all blue: ganz blau tätowiert.

⁵ boomerang (boomarang): der Bumerang, eine knieförmig gebogene Wurf-Waffe der Australier, aus hartem Holz.

boomerang story, but then looked grave again, and said, "He'll convert all the island, I know."

"Yes, if he don't blow it up first."

"Do you remember, Tom, how you and East used to laugh at him and chaff him, because he said he was sure the rooks all had calling-over or prayers, or something of the sort, when the locking-up bell rang? Well, I declare¹," said Arthur, looking up seriously into Tom's laughing eyes, "I do think he was right. Since I've been lying here, I've watched
262 them every night; and do you know, they really do come, and perch all of them just about locking-up time; and then first there's a regular chorus of caws, and then they stop a bit, and one old fellow, or perhaps two or three in different trees, caw solos, and then off they all go again, fluttering about and cawing anyhow till they roost."

"I wonder if the old blackies do talk," said Tom, looking up at them. "How they must abuse me and East, and pray for the Doctor for stopping the slinging."

"There! look, look!" cried Arthur; "don't you see the old fellow without a tail coming up? Martin used to call him the 'clerk.' He can't steer himself. You never saw such fun as he is in a high wind, when he can't steer himself home, and gets carried right past the trees, and has to bear up again and again before he can perch."

The locking-up bell began to toll, and the two boys were silent, and listened to it. The sound soon carried Tom off to the river and the woods, and he began to go over in his mind the many occasions on which he had heard that toll coming faintly down the breeze, and had to pack up his rod in a hurry, and make a run for it, to get in before the gates were shut. He was roused with a start from his

¹ I declare: meiner Treu', wie I say, ©. 76.

memories by Arthur's voice, gentle and weak from his late illness.

"Tom, will you be angry if I talk to you very seriously?"

"No, dear old boy, not I. But ain't you faint, Arthur, or ill? What can I get you? Don't say anything to hurt yourself now—you are very weak; let me come up again."

"No, no, I shan't hurt myself: I'd sooner speak to you now, if you don't mind. I've asked Mary to tell the Doctor that you are with me, so you needn't go down to calling-over; and I mayn't have another chance, for I shall most likely have to go home for change of air to get well, and mayn't come back this half."

"Oh, do you think you must go away before the end of the half? I'm so sorry. It's more than five ²⁶³ weeks yet to the holidays, and all the fifth-form examination and half the cricket-matches to come yet. And what shall I do all that time alone in our study? Why, Arthur, it will be more than twelve weeks before I see you again. Oh, hang it, I can't stand that! Besides, who's to keep me up to working at the examination books¹? I shall come out bottom of the form² as sure as eggs is eggs³."

Tom was rattling on⁴, half in joke, half in earnest, for he wanted to get Arthur out of his serious vein, thinking it would do him harm; but Arthur broke in—

¹ the examination books: die für das Examen bestimmten Bücher und Abschnitte, auf welche sich die Prüfung beschränkt.

² bottom of the form: als letzter der Klasse; eigentlich at the bottom. Vergl. S. 91: are the colour.

³ as sure as eggs is eggs, abgefürzt as sure as eggs: so sicher wie nur was, so sicher wie das Einmaleins. Ingoldsby Leg. Misadv. at Margate. Then Bogey'd have you, as sure as eggs are eggs. (As sure as X is X!) Sonst sagt man as sure as fate, as sure as a gun, as sure as death and taxes, as sure as sure u. a. m.

⁴ to rattle on: weiter schwagen, plappern (von schnellem Sprechanismus).

"Oh, please, Tom, stop, or you'll drive all I had to say out of my head. And I'm already horribly afraid I'm going to make you angry."

"Don't gammon, young 'un," rejoined Tom (the use of the old name, dear to him from old recollections, made Arthur start and smile, and feel quite happy); "you know you ain't afraid, and you've never made me angry since the first month we chummed together. Now I'm going to be quite sober for a quarter of an hour, which is more than I am once in a year; so make the most of it; heave ahead¹, and pitch into me right and left²."

"Dear Tom, I ain't going to pitch into you," said Arthur piteously; "and it seems so cocky³ in me to be advising you, who've been my backbone⁴ ever since I've been at Rugby, and have made the school a paradise to me. Ah, I see I shall never do it, unless I go head-over-heels at once, as you said when you taught me to swim. Tom, I want you to give up using vulgus-books and cribs⁵."

Arthur sank back on to his pillow with a sigh, as if the effort had been great; but the worst was now over, and he looked straight at Tom, who was evidently taken aback⁶. He leant his elbows on his
264 knees, and stuck his hands into his hair, whistled a verse of "Billy Taylor⁷," and then was quite silent for another minute. Not a shade crossed his face, but he was clearly puzzled. At last he looked up and caught Arthur's anxious look, took his hand, and said simply—

¹ heave ahead, get on with you.

² pitch into me right and left: gieß mir's gehörig, haue zu von beiden Seiten.

³ cocky: unverschämt, frech, slang. Vergl. coxy, S. 156.

⁴ my backbone: mein fester Halt.

⁵ a crib: eine Gießbrücke, englische Übersetzung eines klassischen Schriftstellers. Vergl. to crib, S. 220.

⁶ taken aback, siehe S. 241.

⁷ Billy Taylor, siehe Anhang zum ersten Teil, S. 262.

"Why, young 'un?"

"Because you're the honestest boy in Rugby, and that ain't honest."

"I don't see that."

"What were you sent to Rugby for?"

"Well, I don't know exactly—nobody ever told me. I suppose because all boys are sent to a public school in England."

"But what do you think yourself? What do you want to do here, and to carry away?"

Tom thought a minute. "I want to be A 1¹ at cricket and football, and all the other games, and to make my hands keep my head against any fellow, lout or gentleman. I want to get into the sixth before I leave, and to please the Doctor; and I want to carry away just as much Latin and Greek as will take me through Oxford respectably. There now, young 'un, I never thought of it before, but that's pretty much about my figure². Ain't it all on the square³? What have you got to say to that?"

"Why, that you are pretty sure to do all that you want, then."

"Well, I hope so. But you've forgot one thing, what I want to leave behind me. I want to leave behind me," said Tom, speaking slow, and looking much moved, "the name of a fellow who never bullied a little boy, or turned his back on⁴ a big one."

¹ A 1 (a one): Nummer eins (Eins a, Eins mit Auszeichnung), die höchste Nummer einer Censur, hier, wie oft: der erste (first rate).

² that's pretty much about my figure: das ist so einigermassen (ungefähr) mein Anschlag, meine Rechnung. About ist adverbial mit pretty much zu verbinden, eine familiäre Wendung; figure, vom Preise entlehnt, wie a high figure, what is the figure?

³ on the square, im Slang Dict. erklärt fair and strictly honest, eigentlich: nach dem Richtmaß, d. h. in gehöriger Ordnung. Thiem führt den ebenso gebrauchten Seemannsausdruck „vierkant“ (vierfantig) an. Vergl. ἀνὰ τετραγώνος.

⁴ to turn one's back on, gewöhnlich: einem den Rücken kehren, was aus Unachtsamkeit oder Nachlässigkeit geschehen kann, aber auch

Arthur pressed his hand, and after a moment's silence went on: "You say, Tom, you want to please
265 the Doctor. Now, do you want to please him by what he thinks you do, or by what you really do?"

"By what I really do, of course."

"Does he think you use cribs and vulgus-books?"

Tom felt at once that his flank was turned¹, but he couldn't give in. "He was at Winchester himself²," said he; "he knows all about it."

"Yes, but does he think *you* use them? Do you think he approves of it?"

"You young villain!" said Tom, shaking his fist at Arthur, half vexed and half pleased, "I never think about it. Hang it—there, perhaps he don't. Well, I suppose he don't."

Arthur saw that he had got his point³; he knew his friend well, and was wise in silence, as in speech. He only said, "I would sooner have the Doctor's good opinion of me as I really am than any man's in the world."

After another minute, Tom began again: "Look here, young 'un; how on earth am I to get time to play the matches this half, if I give up cribs? We're in the middle of that long crabbed chorus in the 'Agamemnon⁴;' I can only just make head or tail of it with the crib. Then there's Pericles' speech

Berachtung ausdrückt; hier steht es für das sonst übliche to turn one's back to (= to show one's back to): einem den Rücken zeigen, d. h. sich feige vor ihm zurückziehen.

¹ his flank was turned: der Gegner fiel ihm in die Flanke. To turn (*tourner*): den Feind umgehen und im Rücken angreifen.

² He was at Winchester himself. Vergl. S. 219.

³ to get (gain) one's point: seinen Zweck erreichen, gewonnenes Spiel haben (Thiem).

⁴ that chorus in the Agamemnon. Gemeint ist wohl das zweite Stasimum, v. 352 ff., in der Tragödie Agamemnon von Aeschylus (Aischylos), 525—456. To make head or tail of something: den Sinn herausbekommen, entlehnt von tossing up (head or tail: Kopf oder Schrift). Vergl. S. 88.

coming on in Thucydides¹, and 'The Birds'² to get up for the examination, besides the Tacitus³." Tom groaned at the thought of his accumulated labours. "I say, young 'un, there's only five weeks or so left to holidays; mayn't I go on as usual for this half? I'll tell the Doctor about it some day, or you may."

Arthur looked out of window; the twilight had come on and all was silent. He repeated, in a low voice, "In this thing⁴ the Lord pardon thy servant, that when my master goeth into the house of Rimmon to worship there, and he leaneth on my hand, and I bow myself in the house of Rimmon: when I bow down myself in the house of Rimmon, the Lord pardon thy servant in this thing."

Not a word more was said on the subject, and 266
the boys were again silent—one of those blessed, short silences in which the resolves which colour a life are so often taken.

Tom was the first to break it. "You've been very ill indeed, haven't you, Geordie?" said he, with a mixture of awe and curiosity, feeling as if his friend had been in some strange place or scene, of which he could form no idea, and full of the memory of his own thoughts during the last week.

"Yes, very. I'm sure the Doctor thought I was going to die. He gave me the sacrament last Sunday, and you can't think what he is when one is ill.

¹ Pēr'yclēs' (s = z) speech in Thūcŷd'idēs (c = s, s = z). Thucydides (Thukydides), 471 (?)—401 (?), schrieb eine Geschichte des peloponnesischen Krieges bis zur Mitte des Jahres 411 in acht Büchern. Die berühmte Leichenrede des Perikles steht II, 35—46.

² The Birds, eine der berühmtesten Komödien des Aristophanes, 444 (?)—380 (?), welche 414 in Athen aufgeführt wurde.

³ Tacitus (Tās'stūs). P. Cornelius Tacitus, 54 (?)—117 (?), schrieb außer einem Dialog über Redner der Kaiserzeit das Leben seines Schwiegervaters Agricola, eine Schilderung Germaniens und zwei größere historische Werke Historiae und Annales (richtiger bezeichnet ab excessu divi Augusti). To get up: sich einpaufen.

⁴ In this thing etc. Vergl. S. 205.

He said such brave, and tender, and gentle things to me; I felt quite light and strong after it, and never had any more fear. My mother brought our old medical man, who attended me when I was a poor sickly child; he said my constitution was quite changed, and that I'm fit for anything now. If it hadn't, I couldn't have stood three days of this illness. That's all thanks to you, and the games you've made me fond of."

"More thanks to old Martin," said Tom; "he's been your real friend."

"Nonsense, Tom; he never could have done for me what you have."

"Well, I don't know; I did little enough. Did they tell you—you won't mind hearing it now, I know,—that poor Thompson died last week? The other three boys are getting quite round¹, like you."

"Oh, yes, I heard of it."

Then Tom, who was quite full of it, told Arthur of the burial-service in the chapel, and how it had impressed him, and he believed all the other boys. "And though the Doctor never said a word about it," said he, "and it was a half-holiday and match-day, there wasn't a game played in the close all the afternoon, and the boys all went about as if it were Sunday."

267 "I'm very glad of it," said Arthur. "But, Tom, I've had such strange thoughts about death lately. I've never told a soul of them, not even my mother. Sometimes I think they're wrong; but, do you know, I don't think in my heart I could be sorry at the death of any of my friends."

Tom was taken quite aback. "What in the world is the young 'un after now?" thought he; "I've swallowed² good many of his crotchets, but this

¹ to get round, gewöhnlicher to come round: wieder wohl werden, sich erholen.

² to swallow: hinunterzuschlucken, etwas Unsinniges hinnehmen

altogether beats me. He can't be quite right in his head." He didn't want to say a word, and shifted about uneasily in the dark; however, Arthur seemed to be waiting for an answer, so at last he said, "I don't think I quite see what you mean, Geordie. One's told so often to think about death, that I've tried it on¹ sometimes, especially this last week. But we won't talk of it now. I'd better go—you're getting tired, and I shall do you harm."

"No, no, indeed I ain't, Tom; you must stop till nine, there's only twenty minutes. I've settled you shall stop till nine. And oh! do let me talk to you—I must talk to you. I see it's just as I feared. You think I'm half mad—don't you now?"

"Well, I did think it odd what you said, Geordie, as you ask me."

Arthur paused a moment, and then said quickly, "I'll tell you how it all happened. At first, when I was sent to the sick room, and found I had really got the fever, I was terribly frightened. I thought I should die, and I could not face it for a moment. I don't think it was sheer cowardice at first, but I thought how hard it was to be taken away from my mother and sisters, and you all, just as I was beginning to see my way to many things, and to feel that I might be a man and do a man's work. To die without having fought, and worked, and given one's life away, was too hard to bear. I got terribly impatient, and accused God of injustice, and strove to justify myself; and the harder I strove the deeper I sank. Then the image of my dear father often came across me, but I turned from it. Whenever it came, a heavy numbing throb seemed to take hold of my heart and say, 'Dead—dead—dead.' And I cried

(sich gefallen lassen). This beats me: dieß schlägt mich aus dem Felde, dieß übersteigt meine Begriffe.

¹ to try on, eigentlich: Kleidungsstücke anpassen, für einfaches to try.

out, 'The living, the living shall praise Thee, O God; the dead cannot praise Thee. There is no work in the grave; in the night no man can work. But I can work. I can do great things. I *will* do great things. Why wilt Thou slay me?' And so I struggled and plunged, deeper and deeper, and went down into a living black tomb. I was alone there, with no power to stir or think; alone with myself; beyond the reach of all human fellowship; beyond Christ's reach, I thought, in my nightmare. You, who are brave and bright and strong, can have no idea of that agony. Pray to God you never may. Pray as for your life."

Arthur stopped—from exhaustion, Tom thought; but what between¹ his fear lest Arthur should hurt himself, his awe, and longing for him to go on, he couldn't ask, or stir to help him.

Presently he went on, but quite calm and slow. "I don't know how long I was in that state. For more than a day, I know; for I was quite conscious, and lived my outer life all the time, and took my medicine, and spoke to my mother, and heard what they said. But I didn't take much note of time; I thought time was over for me, and that that tomb was what was beyond. Well, on last Sunday morning, as I seemed to lie in that tomb, alone, as I thought, for ever and ever, the black dead wall was cleft in two, and I was caught up and borne through into the light by some great power, some living mighty spirit. Tom, do you remember the living creatures and the wheels in Ezekiel? It was just like that: 'when they went'² I heard the noise of their wings, like the noise of great waters, as the voice of the
269 Almighty, the voice of speech, as the noise of an host; when they stood they let down their wings'—
'and they went every one straight forward; whither

¹ what between, siehe ©. 70.

² when they went, etc. Ezek. 1, 24. — And they went, etc.

the spirit was to go they went, and they turned not when they went.' And we rushed through the bright air, which was full of myriads of living creatures, and paused on the brink of a great river. And the power held me up, and I knew that that great river was the grave, and death dwelt there; but not the death I had met in the black tomb—that I felt was gone for ever. For on the other bank of the great river I saw men and women and children rising up pure and bright, and the tears were wiped from their eyes, and they put on glory and strength, and all weariness and pain fell away. And beyond were a multitude which no man could number, and they worked at some great work; and they who rose from the river went on and joined in the work. They all worked, and each worked in a different way, but all at the same work. And I saw there my father, and the men in the old town whom I knew when I was a child; many a hard stern man, who never came to church, and whom they called atheist and infidel. There they were, side by side with my father, whom I had seen toil and die for them, and women and little children, and the seal¹ was on the foreheads of all. And I longed to see what the work was, and could not; so I tried to plunge in the river, for I thought I would join them, but I could not. Then I looked about to see how they got into the river. And this I could not see, but I saw myriads on this side, and they too worked, and I knew that it was the same work; and the same seal was on their foreheads. And though I saw that there was toil and anguish in the work of these, and that most that were working were blind and feeble, yet I longed no more to plunge into the river, but more and more to know what the work was. And as I looked I

¹ the seal. Rev. 9, 4. Those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads.

saw my mother and my sisters, and I saw the Doctor, and you, Tom, and hundreds more whom I knew; 270 and at last I saw myself too, and I was toiling and doing ever so little a piece of the great work. Then it all melted away, and the power left me, and as it left me I thought I heard a voice say, 'The vision is for an appointed time¹; though it tarry, wait for it, for in the end it shall speak and not lie, it shall surely come, it shall not tarry.' It was early morning I know then, it was so quiet and cool, and my mother was fast asleep in the chair by my bedside; but it wasn't only a dream of mine. I know it wasn't a dream. Then I fell into a deep sleep, and only woke after afternoon chapel; and the Doctor came and gave me the sacrament, as I told you. I told him and my mother I should get well—I knew I should; but I couldn't tell them why. Tom," said Arthur, gently, after another minute, "do you see why I could not grieve now to see my dearest friend die? It can't be—it isn't, all fever or illness. God would never have let me see it so clear if it wasn't true. I don't understand it all yet—it will take me my life and longer to do that—to find out what the work is."

When Arthur stopped there was a long pause. Tom could not speak, he was almost afraid to breathe, lest he should break the train of Arthur's thoughts. He longed to hear more, and to ask questions. In another minute nine o'clock struck, and a gentle tap at the door called them both back into the world again. They did not answer, however, for a moment, and so the door opened and a lady came in carrying a candle.

She went straight to the sofa, and took hold of Arthur's hand, and then stooped down and kissed him.

"My dearest boy, you feel a little feverish again.

¹ The vision, etc. Habakkuk, 2, 3; nicht wörtlich angeführt.

Why didn't you have lights? You've talked too much and excited yourself in the dark."

"Oh, no, mother; you can't think how well I feel. I shall start with you to-morrow for Devonshire. But, mother, here's my friend, here's Tom Brown—you know him?"

"Yes, indeed, I've known him for years," she said, 271 and held out her hand to Tom, who was now standing up behind the sofa. This was Arthur's mother. Tall and slight and fair, with masses of golden hair drawn back from the broad white forehead, and the calm blue eye meeting his so deep and open—the eye that he knew so well, for it was his friend's over again, and the lovely tender mouth that trembled while he looked. She stood there a woman of thirty-eight, old enough to be his mother, and one whose face showed the lines which must be written on the faces of good men's wives and widows—but he thought he had never seen anything so beautiful. He couldn't help wondering if Arthur's sisters were like her.

Tom held her hand, and looked on straight in her face; he could neither let it go nor speak.

"Now, Tom," said Arthur, laughing, "where are your manners? you'll stare my mother out of countenance¹." Tom dropped the little hand with a sigh. "There, sit down, both of you. Here, dearest mother, there's room here;—" and he made a place on the sofa for her. "Tom, you needn't go; I'm sure you won't be called up at first lesson." Tom felt that he would risk being floored at every lesson for the rest of his natural school-life² sooner than go, so sat down. "And now," said Arthur, "I have realized one of the dearest wishes of my life—to see you two together."

¹ to stare out of countenance: durch Anstarren aus der Fassung bringen. Goldsm. Vic. of Wak. p. 17. Looking presumption out of countenance.

² his natural school-life: der natürliche Verlauf seines Schullebens.

And then he led away the talk to their home in Devonshire, and the red bright earth¹, and the deep green combes², and the peat streams like cairngorm³ pebbles, and the wild moor with its high cloudy Tors⁴ for a giant background to the picture—till Tom got jealous, and stood up for the clear chalk streams, and the emerald water meadows⁵ and great elms and willows of the dear old Royal county, as
 272 he gloried to call it. And the mother sat on quiet and loving, rejoicing in their life. The quarter-to-ten struck, and the bell rang for bed before they had well begun their talk, as it seemed.

Then Tom rose with a sigh to go.

"Shall I see you in the morning, Geordie?" said he, as he shook his friend's hand. "Never mind though; you'll be back next half, and I shan't forget the house of Rimmon."

Arthur's mother got up and walked with him to the door, and there gave him her hand again, and again his eyes met that deep loving look, which was like a spell upon him. Her voice trembled slightly as she said, "Good night—you are one who knows what our Father has promised to the friend of the widow and the fatherless⁶. May He deal with you as you have dealt with me and mine!"

¹ the red bright earth. Devonshire hat ausgedehnte Lager von rotem Mergel. Thiem vergleicht die Bezeichnung Westfalens als „Land der roten Erde“. ² combe, *la combe*, ein Wort keltischen Ursprungs, bezeichnet eine Thalschlucht und findet sich oft in Namen, wie Ilfracombe in Devonshire; peat streams; Bäche mit Moorboden.

³ cairngorm, ein nahe an 5000 Fuß hoher Berg (Cairn-gorm mountain), auch eine Berggruppe (Cairn-gorm mountains) der schottischen Grampians im Nordwesten des Sees Avon, an dessen Südküste Ben Mac Dhui emporragt. Es findet sich dort ein Rauchtopas, gewöhnlich bezeichnet Cairngorm stones.

⁴ Tor, keltischen Ursprungs, bedeutet einen vorspringenden Felsen und findet sich häufig in Namen, wie Torbay.

⁵ water meadows: Schwemmweiden; the Royal county, in Erinnerung an Alfred den Großen. Vergl. S. 9 f.

⁶ what Our Father has promised, etc. St. James, 1, 27:

Tom was quite upset; he mumbled something about owing everything good in him to Geordie—looked in her face again, pressed her hand to his lips, and rushed downstairs to his study, where he sat till old Thomas came kicking at the door, to tell him his allowance would be stopped if he didn't go off to bed. (It would have been stopped anyhow, but that he was a great favourite with the old gentleman, who loved to come out in the afternoons into the close to Tom's wicket¹, and bowl slow twisters² to him, and talk of the glories of bygone Surrey³

Pure religion and undefiled before God and the Father is this, To visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, and to keep himself unspotted from the world. Der Lohn wird nicht im Anschluß an diese Worte verheißen; doch vergl. v. 12: He shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him.

¹ wicket, eigentlich: Pförtchen, gebildet aus drei runden, unten zugespitzten Stäben (stumps) von einer Höhe von 3 Fuß 2 Zoll, welche je 3¹/₂ Zoll von einander entfernt aufrecht in den Boden gesteckt werden. Zwischen dem mittleren und den beiden äußeren wird jedesmal ein kleines Querholz (bail) oben lose aufgelegt. Ein solches wicket, das vom Schläger (batsman) verteidigt wird, sucht der Gegner (bowler) im cricket mit seinem Ball umzuwerfen. Bei einer regelmäßigen Partie (cricket-match) gehören zu beiden Seiten je 11 Spieler; doch kommen auch Abweichungen vor, wie z. B. single wicket, das in der Regel von zwei Parteien zu je 5 gespielt wird. Im vorliegenden Falle handelt es sich um bloßes Üben, wobei Tom sich ein wicket aufpflanzt und von einem Gegner Bälle zum Zurückschlagen zuwerfen läßt.

² slow twisters. Bei dem Werfen (bowling) im cricket unterscheidet man slow bowling und fast bowling; jenes ist ein throwing underhand, indem die Haltung der Hand als holding underhand bezeichnet wird, d. h. der Ball ruht auf der Hand und wird etwa geworfen wie bei einem Pistolettwurf im Kegeln. Den eigentlichen Gegensatz zu dieser Art des Wurfs bezeichnet round hand (round arm) bowling, wobei der Arm des Werfenden einen Bogen von rechts nach links beschreibt, indem die Hand bis zur Schulterhöhe erhoben wird. Ein twister, so genannt von twist, einer dem Ball gegebenen Drehung, fliegt beim Aufschlagen (pitch) vor dem wicket etwas seitwärts, und ist daher nicht ganz leicht zu berechnen. Diese ganze Art des Werfens gilt im allgemeinen für etwas altmodisch, wird aber, wie S. 303, zu besonderen Zwecken angewandt.

³ Surrey, Grafschaft zwischen Middlesex im Norden und Suffex

heroes, with whom he had played in former generations.) So Tom roused himself, and took up his candle to go to bed; and then for the first time was aware of a beautiful new fishing-rod, with old Eton's¹ mark on it, and a splendidly bound Bible, which lay on his table, on the title-page of which was written—"TOM BROWN, from his affectionate and grateful friends, Frances Jane Arthur; George Arthur."

I leave you all to guess how he slept, and what he dreamt of.

Chapter VII.

Harry East's Dilemmas and Deliverances.

"The Holy Supper is kept indeed,
In whatso we share with another's need—
Not that which we give, but what we share,
For the gift without the giver is bare:
Who bestows himself with his alms feeds three,
Himself, his hungering neighbour, and Me."

LOWELL, *The Vision of Sir Launfal*².

- 273 The next morning, after breakfast, Tom, East, and Gower met as usual to learn their second lesson together. Tom had been considering how to break³ his proposal of giving up the crib to the others, and having no better way (as indeed none better can ever be found by man or boy), told them simply what had happened; how he had been to see Arthur, who had talked to him upon the subject, and what he had said, and for his part he had made up his mind, and wasn't going to use cribs any more: and not being

im Süden, Hampshire im Westen und Kent im Osten. Es gehören dazu die Stadtteile Londons südlich von der Themse.

¹ Eton, jedenfalls der Name des Fabrikanten.

² Die Verse bilden den Schluß des 8. Gedichts im zweiten Teil von *The Poetical Works of James Russell Lowell*. Lond. Macmillan, 1883, p. 122.

³ to break (something to some one): einem behutsam etwas mitteilen, eröffnen.

quite sure of his ground¹, took the high and pathetic tone, and was proceeding to say, "how that having learnt his lessons with them for so many years, it would grieve him much to put an end to the arrangement, and he hoped at any rate that if they wouldn't go on with him, they should still be just as good friends, and respect one another's motives—but—"

Here the other boys, who had been listening with open eyes and ears, burst in—

"Stuff² and nonsense!" cried Gower. "Here, East, get down the crib and find the place."

"Oh, Tommy, Tommy!" said East, proceeding to do as he was bidden, "that it should ever have come to this³. I knew Arthur 'd be the ruin of you some day, and you of me. And now the time's come,"—and he made a doleful face.

"I don't know about ruin," answered Tom; "I ²⁷⁴ know that you and I would have had the sack⁴ long ago, if it hadn't been for him. And you know it as well as I."

"Well, we were in a baddish⁵ way before he came, I own; but this new crotchet of his is past a joke."

"Let's give it a trial⁶, Harry; come—you know how often he has been right and we wrong."

"Now, don't you two be jawing away⁷ about

¹ not being quite sure of his ground: da er keinen ganz sicheren Boden unter den Füßen fühlte.

² Stuff: Blech, dummes Zeug.

³ that it should ever have come to this: daß es je dahin (so weit) hat kommen müssen (gekommen ist); should wegen eines zu ergänzenden unpersönlichen Hauptsatzes (it is a pity).

⁴ would have had the sack: daß man uns geschäft hätte (Schul-ausdruck). Eigentlich werden to get the sack, to give the sack von Entlassung aus dem Dienste gebraucht, hergenommen von to have to pack up: seine Habseligkeiten zusammenpacken müssen.

⁵ baddish, rather bad.

⁶ Let's give it a trial: laß uns einen Versuch daran wenden.

⁷ to jaw away: schnauzen, quasseln. Square-toes, siehe Pref. p. XXXII. No end of, siehe S. 187. Sucking: unreif, noch nicht

young Square-toes," struck in Gower. "He's no end of a sucking wiseacre, I dare say, but we've no time to lose, and I've got the fives'-court at half-past nine."

"I say, Gower," said Tom, appealingly, "be a good fellow, and let's try if we can't get on without the crib."

"What! in this chorus? Why, we shan't get through ten lines."

"I say, Tom," cried East, having hit on a new idea, "don't you remember, when we were in the upper fourth, and old Momus¹ caught me construing off the leaf of a crib which I'd torn out and put in my book, and which would float out on to the floor, he sent me up to be flogged for it?"

"Yes, I remember it very well."

"Well, the Doctor, after he'd flogged me, told me himself that he didn't flog me for using a translation, but for taking it into lesson, and using it there when I hadn't learnt a word before I came in. He said there was no harm in using a translation to get a clue² to hard passages, if you tried all you could first to make them out without."

"Did he, though?" said Tom; "then Arthur must be wrong."

"Of course he is," said Gower, "the little prig³. We'll only use the crib when we can't construe without it. Go ahead, East."

And on this agreement they started: Tom satisfied with having made his confession, and not sorry
275 to have a *locus pœnitentiæ*⁴, and not to be deprived altogether of the use of his old and faithful friend.

hinter den Ohren trocken; hergenommen von Ausdrücken wie a sucking child, lamb, pig; scherzhaft Shak. Mids. I, 2, 85: as gentle as any sucking dove.

¹ Momus (Gott des Spottes): Spitzname eines Lehrers.

² to get a clue: einen Anhaltspunkt gewinnen. Thiem. Clue: der Leitfaden, in der eigentlichen Bedeutung des Wortes.

³ prig, siehe Pref. p. XXXIV.

⁴ *locus pœnitentiæ*, place of repentance: Raum zur Buße.

The boys went on as usual, each taking a sentence in turn, and the crib being handed to the one whose turn it was to construe. Of course Tom couldn't object to this, as, was it not simply lying there to be appealed to in case the sentence should prove too hard altogether for the construer? But it must be owned that Gower and East did not make very tremendous exertions to conquer¹ their sentences before having recourse to its help. Tom, however, with the most heroic virtue and gallantry rushed into his sentence, searching in a high-minded manner for nominative and verb, and turning over his dictionary frantically for the first hard word that stopped him. But in the meantime Gower, who was bent on getting to fives, would peep quietly into the crib, and then suggest, "Don't you think this is the meaning?" "I think you must take it this way, Brown;" and as Tom didn't see his way to not profiting² by these suggestions, the lesson went on about as quickly as usual, and Gower was able to start for the fives'-court within five minutes of the half-hour.

When Tom and East were left face to face, they looked at one another for a minute, Tom puzzled, and East chock-full of fun, and then burst into a roar of laughter.

"Well, Tom," said East, recovering himself, "I don't see any objection to the new way. It's about as good as the old one, I think; besides the advantage it gives one of feeling virtuous, and looking down on one's neighbours."

Epistola ad Hebræos, 12, 17. Non invenit pœnitentiæ locum: Er fand keinen Raum zur Buße. Luther. Wir sagen gewöhnlich „eine Galgenfrist.“

¹ to conquer: bewältigen.

² Tom didn't see his way to not profiting: Tom mußte nicht, wie er es vermeiden sollte (d. h. er konnte nicht umhin), sich zu nütze zu machen. S. 276: it's hard enough to see one's way: man sieht nicht leicht den Weg klar vor sich.

Tom shoved his hand into his back hair¹. "I ain't so sure," said he; "you two fellows carried me off my legs²: I don't think we really tried one sentence fairly. Are you sure you remember what the Doctor said to you?"

"Yes. And I'll swear I couldn't make out one
276 of my sentences to-day. No, nor ever could. I really don't remember," said East, speaking slowly and impressively, "to have come across one Latin or Greek sentence this half, that I could go and construe by the light of nature³. Whereby I am sure Providence intended cribs to be used."

"The thing to find out," said Tom meditatively, "is how long one ought to grind⁴ at a sentence without looking at the crib. Now I think if one fairly looks out all the words one don't know, and then can't hit it, that's enough."

"To be sure, Tommy," said East demurely, but with a merry twinkle in his eye. "Your new doctrine too, old fellow," added he, "when one comes to think of it, is a cutting at the root of all school morality. You'll take away mutual help, brotherly love, or in the vulgar tongue, giving construes⁵, which I hold to be one of our highest virtues. For how can you distinguish between getting a construe from another boy, and using a crib? Hang it, Tom, if you're going to deprive all our school-fellows of the chance of exercising Christian benevolence and being good Samaritans, I shall cut the concern⁶."

¹ Tom shoved his hand into his back hair. S. 196: Tom stuck his hand in his back hair for a scratch.

² you carried me off my legs: ihr habt mich zum Bantzen gebracht, meine guten Vorsätze über den Haufen geworfen.

³ by the light of nature: durch natürliche Offenbarung, d. h. ohne Geselsbrüde. Die Wendung ist nicht biblisch, obgleich light in der Bibel oft Erleuchtung bedeutet.

⁴ to grind, siehe S. 226.

⁵ giving construes: Mitteilung der Präparation auf die Lektüre, siehe S. 139.

⁶ cut the concern, siehe S. 2.

"I wish you wouldn't joke about it, Harry; it's hard enough to see one's way, a precious sight¹ harder than I thought last night. But I suppose there's a use and an abuse of both, and one'll get straight enough somehow. But you can't make out anyhow that one has a right to use old vulgus-books and copy-books."

"Hullo, more heresy! how fast a fellow goes down hill when he once gets his head before his legs². Listen to me, Tom. Not use old vulgus-books?—why, you Goth! ain't we to take the benefit of the wisdom, and admire and use the work of past generations? Not use old copy-books! Why you might as well say we ought to pull down Westminster Abbey³, and put up a go-to-meeting-shop⁴ with churchwarden windows⁵; or never read Shakespere, ²⁷⁷ but only Sheridan Knowles⁶. Think of all the work and labour that our predecessors have bestowed on these very books; and are we to make their work of no value?"

"I say, Harry, please don't chaff⁷; I'm really serious."

"And then, is it not our duty to consult the

¹ a precious sight: besonders in dieser Verbindung. Vergl. S. 13.

² when he once gets his head before his legs: wenn er erst einmal kopfüber schießt. Vergl. S. 215: head over heels.

³ Westminster Abbey, seit 1245 neu aufgeführt von Heinrich III. an Stelle der alten von Eduard dem Bekenner herrührenden Kapelle, zum Teil wieder umgebaut von Heinrich VII., und von Sir Christopher Wren (1632—1723) vollendet.

⁴ a go-to-meeting shop: eine Konventikel-Stube. Vergl. S. 77 u. 254.

⁵ churchwarden windows: häßliche viereckige Fenster des 17. und 18. Jahrhunderts, in gotische Fenster hineingebaut und so genannt, weil damals Bau und Reparatur von Kirchen in den Händen der churchwardens war, die keinen architektonischen Geschmack besaßen.

⁶ James Sheridan Knowles (nölz), 1794—1862, besonders bekannt durch die Dramen *Virginius* und *William Tell*. Vergl. S. 143.

⁷ to chaff, siehe S. 30.

pleasure of others rather than our own, and above all that of our masters? Fancy then the difference to them in looking over a vulgus which has been carefully touched and retouched by themselves and others, and which must bring them a sort of dreamy pleasure, as if they'd met the thought or expression of it somewhere or another¹—before they were born perhaps; and that of cutting up, and making picture-frames² round all your and my false quantities, and other monstrosities. Why, Tom, you wouldn't be so cruel as never to let old Momus hum over the 'O genus humanum³, again, and then look up doubtfully through his spectacles, and end by smiling and giving three extra marks for it: just for old sake's sake⁴, I suppose."

"Well," said Tom, getting up in something as like a huff⁵ as he was capable of, "it's deuced hard that when a fellow's really trying to do what he ought, his best friends 'll do nothing but chaff him and try to put him down⁶." And he stuck his books under his arm and his hat on his head, preparatory to rushing out into the quadrangle, to testify with his own soul of the faithlessness of friendships.

"Now don't be an ass⁷, Tom," said East, catching hold of him, "you know me well enough by this time; my bark's worse than my bite⁸. You can't expect to ride your new crotchet⁹ without anybody's

¹ somewhere or another, siehe S. 43.

² making picture-frames round: Striche im Viered herumziehen.

³ O genus humanum, siehe S. 220.

⁴ for old sake's sake, siehe S. 42.

⁵ in something as like a huff, etc.: er sah so verärgert (so bitterböse) aus, wie nur irgend möglich. Huff: der Ausbruch des Zorns.

⁶ to put down: dußen.

⁷ ass, siehe Pref. p. XXVI.

⁸ my bark's worse than my bite: ich knurre mehr, als daß ich beiße; ich bin in der That nicht so schlimm, als in Worten. Barking dogs seldom bite.

⁹ to ride your new crotchet: dein verrücktes neues Prinzip zu

trying to stick a nettle under his tail and make him kick you off: especially as we shall all have to go on foot still. But now sit down and let's go over it again. I'll be as serious as a judge¹."

Then Tom sat himself down on the table, and waxed eloquent about all the righteousness and advantages of the new plan, as was his wont whenever he took up anything; going into it as if his life depended upon it, and sparing no abuse which he could think of of the opposite method, which he denounced as ungentlemanly, cowardly, mean, lying, and no one knows what besides. "Very cool of Tom," as East thought, but didn't say, "seeing as how he only came out of Egypt² himself last night at bed-time."

"Well, Tom," said he at last, "you see, when you and I came to school there were none of these sort of notions. You may be right—I dare say you are. Only what one has always felt about the masters is, that it's a fair trial of skill and last³ between us and them—like a match at football, or a battle. We're natural enemies in school, that's the fact. We've got to learn so much Latin and Greek and do so many verses, and they've got to see that we do it. If we can slip the collar⁴ and do so much

reiten, nach Analogie von to ride one's hobby. Das Bild wird genauer ausgeführt.

¹ as serious as a judge: mit Amtsernst, gewöhnlich as grave as a judge, as sober as a judge.

² seeing as how, considering that: in Anbetracht daß. Out of Egypt, out of Egyptian darkness. Diese Redeweise geht zurück auf Exod. 10, 21 f.: Stretch out thine hand toward heaven, that there may be darkness over the land of Egypt; even darkness which may be felt. To come out of Egypt läßt sich aber auch fassen: aus Ägypten errettet werden.

³ last: Ausdauer, gewöhnlicher lasting, im Gegensatz zu skill.

⁴ to slip the collar läßt weniger an das feststehende Pferdekummet denken, wie settling to the collar, S. 115, als an das leicht abzustreifende Halsband der Hunde. Die Wendung unterscheidet sich von shaking off the yoke dadurch, daß sie nicht eine gewalttätige Anstrengung andeutet.

less without getting caught, that's one to us¹. If they can get more out of us, or catch us shirking, that's one to them. All's fair in war, but lying. If I run my luck² against theirs, and go into school without looking at my lessons, and don't get called up, why am I a snob³ or a sneak? I don't tell the master I've learnt it. He's got to find out whether I have or not; what's he paid for? If he calls me up, and I get floored, he makes me write it out in Greek and English. Very good, he's caught me, and I don't grumble. I grant you, if I go and snivel to him⁴, and tell him I've really tried to learn it but found it so hard without a translation, or say I've had a toothache, or any humbug of that kind, I'm a snob. That's my school morality; it's served me—and you too, Tom, for the matter of that⁵—these five years. And it's all clear and fair, no mistake about it. We understand it, and they understand it, and I don't know what we're to come to with any other."

279 Tom looked at him pleased, and a little puzzled. He had never heard East speak his mind seriously

¹ that's one to us: ein Point für uns, mit Bezug auf die vorhergehenden Worte like a match at football.

² If I run my luck: wenn ich mein Glück versuche; sehr gewöhnlich ist die Wendung the run of luck: die Zufälligkeit.

³ snob, hier: Schwindler, ein Wort nordischen Ursprungs und herkommend von provinziellen Bezeichnungen gemeiner Leute, bildet, obgleich nicht etwa entstanden aus s. nob. (sine nobilitate), einen Gegensatz zu nob (noble) und bezeichnete früher den Knoten seiner gemeinen Gesinnung nach. Thackeray, Book of Snobs, hat den Begriff mit Hervorhebung einer Seite fixiert: a snob is that man or woman who is always pretending to be something better—especially richer or more fashionable—than they are. Snob ist also hier der Schüler, der sich einen guten Anschein zu geben sucht, indem er dem Lehrer etwas vorschwindelt, wohl zu unterscheiden von sneak, der sich an den Lehrer anschnürt. Vergl. S. 57.

⁴ if I snivel to him: wenn ich ihm was vorlamentiere; mit Andeutung des Kriechenden. Vergl. S. 148.

⁵ for the matter of that, siehe S. 121.

before, and couldn't help feeling how completely he had hit his own theory and practice up to that time.

"Thank you, old fellow," said he. "You're a good old brick to be serious, and not put out with me¹. I said more than I meant, I dare say, only you see I know I'm right: whatever you and Gower and the rest do, I shall hold on—I must. And as it's all new and an up-hill game, you see, one must hit hard and hold on tight at first."

"Very good," said East; "hold on and hit away, only don't hit under the line²."

"But I must bring you over, Harry, or I shan't be comfortable. Now, I allow all you've said. We've always been honourable enemies with the masters. We found a state of war when we came, and went into it of course. Only don't you think things are altered a good deal? I don't feel as I used to the masters. They seem to me to treat one quite differently."

"Yes, perhaps they do," said East; "there's a new set, you see, mostly, who don't feel sure of themselves yet. They don't want to fight till they know the ground."

"I don't think it's only that," said Tom. "And then the Doctor, he does treat one so openly, and like a gentleman, and as if one was working with him."

"Well, so he does," said East; "he's a splendid fellow, and when I get into the sixth I shall act accordingly. Only you know he has nothing to do with our lessons now, except examining us. I say, though," looking at his watch, "it's just the quarter. Come along."

¹ not put out with me: daß du nicht ärgerlich auf mich bist.

² don't hit under the line, kann sowohl vom Ballspiel fives (S. 82) entlehnt sein, als vom Bogenschießen, wobei ein Schlag nach dem Unterkörper (under the line) als unkommentmäßig (als Sauhieb) gilt. Up-hill: mühsam, beschwerlich, kann nicht entscheidend sein; aber to hold on tight paßt besser zum Bogenschießen.

As they walked out they got a message to say¹, "that Arthur was just starting and would like to say good-bye;" so they went down to the private entrance
280 of the School-house, and found an open carriage, with Arthur propped up with pillows in it, looking already better, Tom thought.

They jumped up on to the steps to shake hands with him, and Tom mumbled thanks for the presents he had found in his study, and looked round anxiously for Arthur's mother.

East, who had fallen back into his usual humour looked quaintly at Arthur, and said—

"So you've been at it again², through that hot-headed convert of yours there. He's been making our lives a burthen to us all the morning about using cribs. I shall get floored to a certainty at second lesson, if I'm called up."

Arthur blushed and looked down. Tom struck in—

"Oh, it's all right. He's converted already; he always comes through the mud after us, grumbling and sputtering."

The clock struck, and they had to go off to school, wishing Arthur a pleasant holiday; Tom lingering behind a moment to send his thanks and love to Arthur's mother.

Tom renewed the discussion after second lesson, and succeeded so far as to get East to promise to give the new plan a fair trial.

Encouraged by his success, in the evening, when they were sitting alone in the large study, where East lived now almost, "vice³ Arthur on leave," after examining the new fishing-rod, which both pronounced

¹ to say: des Inhalts. Thiem.

² So you've been at it again: du hast also wieder darauf (auf daß, was du dir vorgefetzt hast) hingearbeitet, hingezielt; at wie in der Wendung what are you at? was hast du vor?

³ vice (vī'sy), instead of: als Stellvertreter.

to be the genuine article¹, ("play enough² to throw a midge³ tied on a single hair against the wind, and strength enough to hold a grampus,") they naturally began talking about Arthur. Tom, who was still bubbling over with last night's scene, and all the thoughts of the last week, and wanting to clinch and fix the whole in his own mind, which he could never do without first going through the process of belabouring somebody else with it all, suddenly rushed 281 into the subject of Arthur's illness, and what he had said about death.

East had given him the desired opening: after a serio-comic grumble, "that life wasn't worth having now they were tied⁴ to a young beggar who was always 'raising his standard;' and that he, East, was like a prophet's donkey⁵, who was obliged to struggle on after the donkey-man who went after the prophet; that he had none of the pleasure of starting the new crotchets, and didn't half understand them, but had to take the kicks and carry the luggage as if he had all the fun"—he threw his legs up on to the sofa, and put his hands behind his head, and said—

"Well, after all, he's the most wonderful little fellow I ever came across. There ain't such a meek,

¹ the genuine article: ein Ding, wie es sein muß (*comme il faut*), oder, wie Hoppe vorschlägt: der wahre Jakob.

² play enough (with play enough): leicht und beweglich genug, indem play, sowohl als Substantiv wie als Verbum, vom Treiben einer Maschine, z. B. von Rädern, gebraucht wird, die sich frei und mit Leichtigkeit bewegen.

³ midge (das selbe Wort als Mücke), eine Mückenart (Buckmücke, chironomus), sehr zart gebaut und mit kurzem Saugrüssel. Grampus: der Butzkopf, Schwertfisch (*orcinus orca*), zu den Delfinen gehörig, erreicht eine Länge von 20, ja 30 Fuß.

⁴ now they were tied, now that they were tied. Raising his standard: der immer sein Banner aufpflanzte und sie zu folgen nötigte; nicht in der Bedeutung von standard wie S. 141.

⁵ like a prophet's donkey: eine freie und selbständige Bezeichnung des Schriftstellers ohne etwaige Anspielung auf eine Stelle des Alten Testaments. The donkey-man geht auf Tom.

humble boy in the School. Hanged if I don't think now really, Tom, that he believes himself a much worse fellow than you or I, and that he don't think he has more influence in the house than Dot Bowles¹, who came last quarter, and ain't ten yet. But he turns you and me round his little finger, old boy—there's no mistake about that." And East nodded at Tom sagaciously.

"Now or never!" thought Tom; so shutting his eyes² and hardening his heart, he went straight at it, repeating all that Arthur had said, as near as he could remember it, in the very words, and all he had himself thought. The life seemed to ooze out of it³ as he went on, and several times he felt inclined to stop, give it all up, and change the subject. But somehow he was borne on; he had a necessity upon him to speak it all out, and did so. At the end he looked at East with some anxiety, and was delighted to see that that young gentleman was thoughtful and attentive. The fact is, that in the stage of his inner life at which Tom had lately arrived, his intimacy with and friendship for East could not have lasted if he had not made him aware of, and a sharer 282 in, the thoughts that were beginning to exercise⁴ him. Nor indeed could the friendship have lasted if East had shown no sympathy with these thoughts;

¹ Dot: Däumling (Knirps, Thiem), wird der kleinste Schüler Bowles wegen seiner winzigen Gestalt genannt; er ist gleichsam ein bloßes Pünktchen.

² shutting his eyes: indem er die Augen zukneift und blindlings draußlosgeßt. Hardening his heart, hier nicht von Gefühllosigkeit, sondern in der Bedeutung: daß er sein Herz stählt, indem er sich Gewalt anthun muß.

³ The life seemed to ooze out of it: der lebendige Quell schien sich tropfenweis zu verlieren.

⁴ to exercise: unaufhörlich beschäftigen, nicht ruhen lassen. S. 289: Arthur's theory—by which he was much exercised. Milt. P. L. II, 87 f.: Where pain of unextinguishable fire Must exercise us without hope of end.

so that it was a great relief to have unbosomed himself, and to have found that his friend could listen.

Tom had always had a sort of instinct that East's levity was only skin-deep; and this instinct was a true one. East had no want of reverence for anything he felt to be real: but his was one of those natures that burst into what is generally called recklessness and impiety the moment they feel that anything is being poured upon them for their good, which does not come home to their inborn sense of right, or which appeals to anything like self-interest in them. Daring and honest by nature, and outspoken to an extent which alarmed all respectabilities¹, with a constant fund of animal health and spirits² which he did not feel bound to curb in any way, he had gained for himself with the steady part of the School (including as well those who wished to appear steady as those who really were so), the character of a boy whom it would be dangerous to be intimate with; while his own hatred of everything cruel, or underhand, or false, and his hearty respect for what he could see to be good and true, kept off the rest.

Tom, besides being very like East in many points of character, had largely developed in his composition the capacity for taking the weakest side³. This is not putting it strongly enough⁴; it was a necessity with him; he couldn't help it any more than he could eating or drinking. He could never play on the strongest side with any heart⁵ at foot-ball or cricket,

¹ respectabilities, siehe S. 165.

² animal health and spirits, siehe S. Pref. S. XXVI.

³ to take the weakest side: die Partei des Schwächsten ergreifen, sich auf seine Seite stellen.

⁴ This is not putting it strong enough: dies bezeichnet es gar nicht stark genug, drückt es noch nicht einmal aus. Tom war nicht bloß im stande, sich der Schwächeren anzunehmen, sondern es war für ihn eine Notwendigkeit.

⁵ with any heart: mit herzlichster Freude, mit irgend welcher Befriedigung.

and was sure to make friends with any boy who was unpopular, or down on his luck¹.

Now though East was not what is generally called unpopular, Tom felt more and more every day, as their characters developed, that he stood alone, 283 and did not make friends among their contemporaries, and therefore sought him out. Tom was himself much more popular, for his power of detecting humbug was much less acute, and his instincts were much more sociable. He was at this period of his life, too, largely given to taking people for what they gave themselves out to be; but his singleness of heart, fearlessness and honesty were just what East appreciated, and thus the two had been drawn into greater intimacy.

This intimacy had not been interrupted by Tom's guardianship of Arthur.

East had often, as has been said, joined them in reading the Bible; but their discussions had almost always turned upon the characters of the men and women of whom they read, and not become personal to themselves. In fact, the two had shrunk from personal religious discussion, not knowing how it might end; and fearful of risking a friendship very dear to both, and which they felt somehow, without quite knowing why, would never be the same, but either tenfold stronger or sapped at its foundation, after such a communing together.

What a bother all this explaining is! I wish we could get on without it. But we can't. However, you'll all find, if you haven't found it out already, that a time comes in every human friendship, when you must go down into the depths of yourself, and lay bare what is there to your friend, and wait in fear for his answer. A few moments may do it; and

¹ down on his luck: in mißlicher Lage; sonst: heruntergekommen, aber auch: niedergeſchlagen.

it may be (most likely will be, as you are English boys) that you never do it but once. But done it must be, if the friendship is to be worth the name. You must find what is there, at the very root and bottom of one another's hearts; and if you are at once there, nothing on earth can, or at least ought to sunder you.

East had remained lying down until Tom finished speaking, as if fearing to interrupt him; he now sat up at the table, and leant his head on one hand, taking up a pencil with the other, and working little holes with it in the table-cover. After a bit he looked up, stopped the pencil, and said, "Thank you very much, old fellow; there's no other boy in the house would have done it for me but you or Arthur. I can see well enough," he went on after a pause, "all the best big fellows look on me with suspicion; they think I'm a devil-may-care¹, reckless young scamp. So I am—eleven hours out of twelve—but not the twelfth. Then all of our contemporaries worth knowing follow suit², of course; we're very good friends at games and all that, but not a soul of them but you and Arthur ever tried to break through the crust, and see whether there was anything at the bottom of me; and then the bad ones I won't stand, and they know that."

¹ a devil-may-care, reckless young scamp: ein zum Teufel sich an nichts kehrender, rücksichtsloser junger Taugenichts. Devil-may-care als Adjektiv, wie auch devil-may-carish, bisweilen der flüchtigen Aussprache entsprechend geschrieben devil-me-care, devil-me-carish, entstanden aus the devil may care, I don't = I care the devil a bit (for it), bezeichnet einen Grad der Gleichgültigkeit und Ungereimtheit, welcher an Frechheit grenzt. Scamp, zusammenhängend mit to decamp, bedeutete ursprünglich Flüchtling, Vagabund, wurde dann für Dieb und Straßenräuber gebraucht, ist jetzt aber meistens nur Taugenichts, Schlingel (von Knaben).

² to follow suit: bedienen (im Kartenspiel), d. h. eine Karte von der Farbe der ausgespielten daraufgeben; daher: dem Beispiel jemandes folgen, es machen wie ein anderer.

"Don't you think that's half fancy, Harry?"

"Not a bit of it," said East bitterly, pegging away with his pencil. "I see it all plain enough. Bless you, you think everybody's as straightforward and kind-hearted as you are."

"Well, but what's the reason of it? There must be a reason. You can play all the games as well as any one, and sing the best song, and are the best company in the house. You fancy you're not liked, Harry. It's all fancy."

"I only wish it was, Tom. I know I could be popular enough with all the bad ones, but that I won't have, and the good ones won't have me."

"Why not?" persisted Tom; "you don't drink or swear, or get out at night; you never bully, or cheat at lessons. If you only showed you liked it, you'd have all the best fellows in the house running after you."

"Not I," said East. Then with an effort he went on, "I'll tell you what it is. I never stop the Sacrament¹. I can see, from the Doctor downwards, how that tells against me."

285 "Yes, I've seen that," said Tom, "and I've been very sorry for it, and Arthur and I have talked about it. I've often thought of speaking to you, but it's so hard to begin on such subjects. I'm very glad you've opened it. Now, why don't you?"

"I've never been confirmed," said East.

"Not been confirmed!" said Tom in astonishment. "I never thought of that. Why weren't you confirmed with the rest of us nearly three years ago? I always thought you'd been confirmed at home."

"No," answered East sorrowfully; "you see this was how it happened. Last Confirmation was soon

¹ I never stop the Sacrament: ich bleibe nie am Schluß des Gottesdienstes zum Abendmahl. S. 285: No boy got on who didn't stay the Sacrament. Der Accusativ wie in to stay dinner (supper). S. 315: Don't you and Herbert wait supper for me.

after Arthur came, and you were so taken up with him, I hardly saw either of you. Well, when the Doctor sent round for us about it, I was living mostly with Green's set—you know the sort. They all went in—I dare say it was all right, and they got good by it; I don't want to judge them. Only all I could see of their reasons drove me just the other way. 'Twas 'because the Doktor liked it;' 'no boy got on who didn't stay the Sacrament;' 'it was the correct thing,' in fact, like having a good hat to wear on Sundays. I couldn't stand it. I didn't feel that I wanted to lead a different life, I was very well content as I was, and I wasn't going to sham religious¹ to curry favour with the Doctor, or any one else."

East stopped speaking, and pegged away more diligently than ever with his pencil. Tom was ready to cry. He felt half sorry at first that he had been confirmed himself. He seemed to have deserted his earliest friend, to have left him by himself at his worst need for those long years. He got up and went and sat by East and put his arm over his shoulder.

"Dear old boy," he said, "how careless and selfish I've been. But why didn't you come and talk to Arthur and me?"

"I wish to heaven I had," said East, "but I was 286 a fool. It's too late talking of it now."

"Why too late? You want to be confirmed now, don't you?"

"I think so," said East. "I've thought about it a good deal; only often I fancy I must be changing, because I see it's to do me good here, just what stopped me last time. And then I go back again."

"I'll tell you now how 'twas with me," said Tom

¹ to sham religious: *nicht fromm zu stellen*; *transitiv* to sham religion.

warmly. "If it hadn't been for Arthur, I should have done just as you did. I hope I should. I honour you for it. But then he made it out just as if it was taking the weak side before all the world—going in once for all against everything that's strong and rich and proud and respectable, a little band of brothers against the whole world. And the Doctor seemed to say so too, only he said a great deal more."

"Ah!" groaned East, "but there again, that's just another of my difficulties whenever I think about the matter. I don't want to be one of your saints, one of your elect, whatever the right phrase is. My sympathies are all the other way; with the many, the poor devils who run about the streets and don't go to church. Don't stare, Tom; mind, I'm telling you all that's in my heart—as far as I know it—but it's all a muddle¹. You must be gentle with me if you want to land me². Now I've seen a deal of this sort of religion; I was bred up in it, and I can't stand it. If nineteen-twentieths of the world are to be left to uncovenanted mercies³, and that sort of thing, which means in plain English to go to hell, and the other twentieth are to rejoice at it all, why——"

"Oh! but, Harry, they ain't, they don't," broke in Tom, really shocked. "Oh, how I wish Arthur hadn't gone! I'm such a fool about these things. But it's all you want too, East; it is indeed. It cuts

¹ it's all a muddle: es ist alles trübe Gärung, Wirrwarr der Gedanken. Vergl. Pref. S. XXXV.

² to land me: mich auf festen Boden, oder in Sicherheit zu bringen.

³ to be left to uncovenanted mercies: nur angewiesen sein auf Gnade, die nicht durch den Bund Gottes mit den Seinen zugesichert ist. Gen. 17, 7: And I will establish my covenant between me and thee and thy seed after thee in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God unto thee, and to thy seed after thee. Haggai, 2, 5: According to the word that I covenanted with you when you came out of Egypt, so my spirit remaineth among you: fear ye not. Daher the covenant of grace: die Verheißung der Gnade für die Gläubigen.

both ways¹ somehow, being confirmed and taking 287 the Sacrament. It makes you feel on the side of all the good and all the bad too, of everybody in the world. Only there's some great dark strong power, which is crushing you and everybody else. That's what Christ conquered, and we've got to fight. What a fool I am! I can't explain. If Arthur were only here!"

"I begin to get a glimmering of what you mean," said East.

"I say now," said Tom eagerly, "do you remember how we both hated Flashman?"

"Of course I do," said East; "I hate him still. What then?"

"Well, when I came to take the Sacrament, I had a great struggle about that. I tried to put him out of my head; and when I couldn't do that, I tried to think of him as evil, as something that the Lord who was loving me hated, and which I might hate too. But it wouldn't do. I broke down: I believe Christ himself broke me down; and when the Doctor gave me the bread and wine, and leant over me praying, I prayed for poor Flashman, as if it had been you or Arthur."

East buried his face in his hands on the table. Tom could feel the table tremble. At last he looked up, "Thank you again, Tom," said he; "you don't know what you may have done for me to-night. I think I see now how the right sort of sympathy with poor devils is got at."

"And you'll stop the Sacrament next time, won't you?" said Tom.

"Can I, before I'm confirmed?"

"Go and ask the Doctor."

"I will."

¹ It cuts both ways: es ist zweifelhafte, es hat zwei Seiten. It makes you feel, etc. •

That very night, after prayers, East followed the Doctor and the old Verger bearing the candle, upstairs. Tom watched, and saw the Doctor turn
 288 round when he heard footsteps following him closer than usual, and say, "Hah, East! Do you want to speak with me, my man¹?"

"If you please, sir;" and the private door closed and Tom went to his study in a state of great trouble of mind.

It was almost an hour before East came back: then he rushed in breathless.

"Well, it's all right," he shouted, seizing Tom by the hand. "I feel as if a ton-weight were off my mind²."

"Hurra," said Tom. "I knew it would be; but tell us all about it!"

"Well, I just told him all about it. You can't think how kind and gentle he was, the great grim man, whom I've feared more than anybody on earth. When I stuck, he lifted me, just as if I had been a little child. And he seemed to know all I'd felt, and to have gone through it all. And I burst out crying—more than I've done this five years; and he sat down by me, and stroked my head; and I went blundering on, and told him all; much worse things than I've told you. And he wasn't shocked a bit, and didn't snub³ me, or tell me I was a fool, and it was all nothing but pride or wickedness, though I dare say it was. And he didn't tell me not to follow out my thoughts, and he didn't give me any cut-

¹ my man: mein Junge, mein Kerlchen.

² as if a ton-weight were off my mind: als ob eine Centnerlast (ein Stein) von meinem Herzen gewälzt wäre. Dick. Christm. Car. 68: The weight was off her mind. I have a weight on my mind ist gewöhnlicher als something lies heavy on my heart. Vergl. S. 289: Which ill-luck however did not sit heavily on either of their souls.

³ to snub: anschnauzen, ansfahren, schmeiße zurückweisen.

and-dried¹ explanation. But when I'd done he just talked a bit—I can hardly remember what he said yet; but it seemed to spread round me like healing, and strength, and light; and to bear me up, and plant me on a rock, where I could hold my footing, and fight for myself. I don't know what to do, I feel so happy. And it's all owing to you, dear old boy!" and he seized Tom's hand again.

"And you're to come to the Communion?" said Tom.

"Yes, and to be confirmed in the holidays."

Tom's delight was as great as his friend's. But he hadn't yet had out all his own talk, and was bent on improving the occasion: so he proceeded to pro-²⁸⁹ pound Arthur's theory about not being sorry for his friends' deaths, which he had hitherto kept in the background, and by which he was much exercised; for he didn't feel it honest to take what pleased him and throw over the rest, and was trying vigorously to persuade himself that he should like all his best friends to die off-hand.

But East's powers of remaining serious were exhausted, and in five minutes he was saying the most ridiculous things he could think of, till Tom was almost getting angry again.

Despite of himself, however, he couldn't help laughing and giving it up, when East appealed to him with "Well, Tom, you ain't going to punch my head, I hope, because I insist upon being sorry when you got to earth³?"

¹ cut-and-dried: fix und fertig, schon vorrätig.

² to come to the Communion. East wird zum Abendmahl zugelassen und nachträglich konfirmiert, so wie Arnold bisweilen Knaben, die noch nicht konfirmiert waren, den Genuß des Abendmahls gestattete. Stanley, *Life of Arnold*, I, 161: And when—especially to the very young boys, who sometimes partook of the Communion—he bent himself down with looks of fatherly tenderness, etc.

³ to get to earth, to get beneath the sod: begraben werden;

And so their talk finished for that time, and they tried to learn first lesson; with very poor success, as appeared next morning, when they were called up and narrowly escaped being flogged, which ill-luck, however, did not sit heavily on either of their souls.

Chapter VIII.

Tom Brown's last Match.

"Heaven grant the manlier heart, that timely, ere
Youth fly, with life's real tempest would be coping;
The fruit of dreamy hoping
Is, waking, blank despair."

CLOUGH. *Ambarvalia*¹.

The curtain now rises upon the last act of our little drama—for hard-hearted publishers warn me that a single volume must of necessity have an end. Well, well! the pleasantest things must come to an end. I little thought last long vacation², when I

nicht etwa: zur Erde werden, was ausgebrüht würde mit dust. Gen. 3, 19: Dust thou art, and unto dust thou shalt return.

¹ Arthur Hugh Clough (ipr. cluff), am 1. Januar 1819 zu Liverpool geboren und am 13. November 1861 zu Florenz gestorben, war ein Lieblingsjünger Arnolds in Rugby. Eine 1849 erschienene Sammlung sehr ernsther lyrischer Gedichte führt den Titel *Ambarvalia* nach einem altrömischen Weihesest, das im Frühjahr zu Ehren der Götter des Ackerbaues gefeiert wurde, indem man ein Stülpopfer um die Fluren herumführte. Die *Ambarvalia* finden sich mit Auslassungen, die der Verfasser noch selbst bestimmt hat, in der Gesamtausgabe *Poems by A. H. Clough*, 2nd ed. Cambr. 1863. Die angeführten Verse sind einem aus dem Jahre 1841 herstammenden Gedicht entnommen, das S. 14 der Sammlung steht.

² long vacation. Die Sitzungszeiten der Gerichtshöfe sind Hilary term (vom 11. bis 31. Januar), Easter term (vom 15. April bis 8. Mai), Trinity term (vom 22. Mai bis 12. Juni) und Michaelmas term (vom 2. bis 25. November). Die längeren Pausen zwischen denselben werden als vacations, Gerichtsferien, bezeichnet, und die längste, 4¹/₂ Monat betragende Zwischenzeit zwischen Trinity term und Michaelmas term heißt long vacation.

began these pages to help while away¹ some spare 290 time at a watering-place, how vividly many an old scene, which had lain hid away for years in some dusty old corner of my brain, would come back again, and stand before me as clear and bright as if it had happened yesterday. The book has been a most grateful task to me, and I only hope that all you, my dear young friends who read it, (friends assuredly you must be, if you get as far as this,) will be half as sorry to come to the last stage as I am.

Not but what² there has been a solemn and a sad side to it. As the old scenes became living, and the actors in them became living too, many a grave in the Crimea and distant India, as well as in the quiet churchyards of our dear old country, seemed to open and send forth their dead, and their voices and looks and ways were again in one's ears and eyes, as in the old school-days. But this was not sad; how should it be, if we believe as our Lord has taught us? How should it be, when, one more turn of the wheel³, and we shall be by their sides again, learning from them again, perhaps, as we did when we were new boys?

Then there were others of the old faces so dear to us once, who had somehow or another⁴ just gone clean out of sight—are they dead or living? We know not; but the thought of them brings no sadness with it. Wherever they are, we can well believe they are doing God's work and getting His wages.

But are there not some, whom we still see sometimes in the streets, whose haunts and homes we

¹ to help while away. Der einfache Infinitiv ohne *to* nach *help* ist aus der älteren Sprache in den gewöhnlichen Sprachgebrauch übergegangen.

² Not but what: nicht als ob nicht, abgesehen davon daß, obgleich, etwas altertümlich statt not but that, wie *but what* für *but that*.

³ turn of the wheel, siehe S. 2.

⁴ somehow or another, siehe S. 43.

know, whom we could probably find almost any day in the week if we were set to do it, yet from whom we are really farther than we are from the dead, and from those who have gone out of our ken? Yes, there are and must be such; and therein lies the sadness of old School memories. Yet of these our old comrades, from whom more than time and space
 291 separate us, there are some, by whose sides we can feel sure that we shall stand again when time shall be no more. We may think of one another now as dangerous fanatics or narrow bigots, with whom no truce is possible, from whom we shall only sever more and more to the end of our lives, whom it would be our respective duties to imprison or hang, if we had the power. We must go our way, and they theirs, as long as flesh and spirit hold together; but let our own Rugby poet¹ speak words of healing for this trial:—

“To veer how vain! on, onward strain,
 Brave barks! in light, in darkness too;
 Through winds and tides one compass guides.
 To that, and your own selves, be true.

“But, O blithe breeze! and O great seas!
 Though ne’er that earliest parting past,
 On your wide plain they join again,
 Together lead them home at last.

“One port, methought, alike they sought,
 One purpose hold where’er they fare.
 O bounding breeze! O rushing seas!
 At last, at last, unite them there.”*

¹ our own Rugby poet; siehe S. 289.

* CLOUGH, *Ambarvalia*. Das Gedicht mit der Überschrift *Qua cursum ventus* (Poems, p. 27 f.) schildert, wie Schiffe, die bei der Windstille des Abends nahe zusammen lagen, nachts im Sturme weit von einander fortgetrieben werden. Nachdem das Bild dahin gedeutet ist, daß Menschen, die früher in ihren Bestrebungen übereinstimmten, sich beim Wiederbegegnen nach einer Trennung ganz verändert finden, folgen die angeführten Verse.

This is not mere longing, it is prophecy. So over these two, our old friends who are friends no more, we sorrow not as men without hope. It is only for those who seem to us to have lost compass and purpose, and to be driven helplessly on rocks and quicksands; whose lives are spent in the service of the world, the flesh, and the devil; for self alone, and not for their fellow-men, their country, or their God, that we must mourn and pray without sure hope and without light; trusting only that He, in whose hands they as well as we are, who has died for them as well as for us, who sees all His creatures

"With larger, other eyes than ours,
To make allowance for us all,"

will, in His own way and at His own time, lead them 292
also home.

Another two years¹ have passed, and it is again the end of the summer half-year at Rugby; in fact, the School has broken up². The fifth-form examinations³ were over last week, and upon them have followed the Speeches⁴, and the sixth-form examinations for Exhibitions⁵; and they too are over now. The boys have gone to all the winds of heaven, ex-

¹ Another two years have passed, grammatisch ungenau.

² broken up: siehe S. 48.

³ The fifth-form examinations: daß vom Direktor angestellte Schlußexamen der Klasse. S. 279: Only you know he (the Doctor) has nothing to do with our lessons now, except examining us. Vergl. the monthly examinations, S. 139.

⁴ the Speeches (speech-day): der Aktuß mit Vorträgen der Schüler.

⁵ the sixth-form examinations for exhibitions. Es werden in Rugby jährlich im Juli drei größere Universitätsstipendien (major exhibitions) im Betrag von 60 Pfund, und vier kleinere (minor exhibitions) von 30 Pfund auf vier Jahre verliehen. Zu dem Examen, daß mit den Bewerbern angestellt wird, werden Böglinge der obersten Klasse (sixth form) zugelassen, welche die Schule drei Jahre lang besucht haben.

cept the town boys and the eleven, and the few enthusiasts besides who have asked leave to stay in their houses to see the result of the cricket-matches. For this year the Wellesburn return match¹ and the Marylebone match² are played at Rugby, to the great delight of the town and neighbourhood, and the sorrow of those aspiring young cricketers who have been reckoning for the last three months on showing off at Lord's ground.

The Doctor started for the Lakes³ yesterday morning, after an interview with the captain of the eleven, in the presence of Thomas⁴, at which he arranged in what School the cricket dinners were to be, and all other matters necessary for the satisfactory carrying out of the festivities; and warned them as to keeping all spirituous liquors out of the close, and having the gates closed by nine o'clock.

The Wellesburn match was played out with great success yesterday, the School winning by three

¹ the Wellesburn return match: die Rebanché-Partie (Hoppe) mit den Spielern des Klubs von Wellesburn (Wellesbourne Hastings) in Warwickshire, fünf englische Meilen östlich von Stratford-on-Avon.

² the Marylebone match: ein Wettkampf mit dem Marylebone Cricket Club, dem angesehensten derartigen Klub in England, der als die höchste Autorität für alles das Spiel Betreffende gilt. Er hat seinen Namen von dem nordwestlichen Stadtteil Londons, so genannt nach der Kirche Marylebone (eigentlich St. Mary le bourne). Ihm gehört Lord's cricket ground am St. John's wood road westlich von Regent's Park.

³ the Lakes: die Seen von Westmoreland, deren bedeutendster, the Lake of Windermere, zwischen jener Grafschaft und dem nördlichsten Teil von Lancashire liegend, sich durch den Leven in die Morecambe Bay ergießt. Nördlich von jenen Seen liegt Rydal, nordwestlich Ambleside, zwischen beiden Orten Fox Howe, die Besitzung Dr. Arnolds. Vergl. S. 185. In Rydal Mount ließ sich 1813 Wordsworth nieder, und von seinem Aufenthalt in dieser Gegend hat er mit seinen Freunden Coleridge und Southey die Bezeichnung the Lakists oder the Lake School erhalten. Auch de Quincey und Wilson zählt man noch zu dieser Schule.

⁴ Thomas, siehe S. 133.

wickets¹; and to-day the great event of the cricketing year, the Marylebone match, is being played. What a match it has been! The London eleven came down by an afternoon train yesterday, in time to see the end of the Wellesburn match; and as soon as it was over, their leading men and umpire² inspected the ground, criticising it rather unmercifully. The Captain of the School eleven, and one or two others, who had played the Lord's match before, and ²⁹³ knew old Mr. Aislabie³ and several of the Lord's men, accompanied them: while the rest of the eleven looked on from under the Three Trees with admiring eyes, and asked one another the names of the illustrious strangers, and recounted how many runs each of them had made in the late matches in *Bell's Life*⁴. They looked such hard-bitten, wiry, whiskered fellows, that their young adversaries felt rather desponding as to the result of the morrow's match. The ground was at last chosen, and two men set to work upon it to water and roll; and then, there being yet some half-hour of daylight, some one had suggested a dance on the turf. The close was half full of citizens and their families, and the idea was hailed with enthusiasm. The cornopean-player⁵ was still on the ground; in five minutes the eleven and half-a-dozen of the Wellesburn and Marylebone men got partners somehow or another, and a merry country-dance⁶ was going on, to which every one flocked, and new couples joined in every minute, till there were a hundred of them going down the

¹ by three wickets, siehe den Anhang.

² umpire, siehe den Anhang.

³ Mr. Aislabie war zu Anfang der 40er Jahre Secretary of the Marylebone Cricket Club.

⁴ Bell's Life, siehe S. 237.

⁵ cornopean, siehe S. 133.

⁶ country-dance: Anglaise. Die Charakteristik down the middle (zwischen den in zwei Reihen einander gegenüberstehenden Herren und Damen) and up again finden sich ebenso Dick. Christm. Car. p. 46. To cross hands, im sogenannten Roulinet.

middle and up again—and the long line of School buildings looked gravely down on them, every window glowing with the last rays of the western sun, and the rooks clanged about in the tops of the old elms, greatly excited, and resolved on having their country-dance too, and the great flag¹ flapped lazily in the gentle western breeze. Altogether it was a sight which would have made glad the heart of our brave old founder, Lawrence Sheriff², if he were half as good a fellow as I take him to have been. It was a cheerful sight to see; but what made it so valuable in the sight of the Captain of the School eleven was, that he there saw his young hands³ shaking off their shyness and awe of the Lord's men, as they crossed hands and capered about on the grass together; for the strangers entered into⁴ it all, and threw away their cigars, and danced and shouted like boys; 294 while old Mr. Aislabie stood by looking on in his white hat, leaning on a bat, in benevolent enjoyment. "This hop will be worth thirty runs⁵ to us to-morrow, and will be the making of⁶ Raggles and Johnson," thinks the young leader, as he revolves many things in his mind, standing by the side of Mr. Aislabie, whom he will not leave for a minute, for he feels that the character of the School for courtesy⁷ is resting on his shoulders.

¹ the great flag, welche auf dem Turm eines Schulgebäudes (Sixth School Tower) zu flattern pflegte.

² Lawrence Sheriff, siehe Einleitung S. XX f.

³ young hands (wie S. 294): junge Mannschaft, junge Spieler. Vergl. S. 203.

⁴ to enter into: auf etwas eingehen.

⁵ will be worth thirty runs: wird dreißig Points einbringen, nicht sowohl wegen der Ermüdung der Gegner vom Tanzen, als weil die jungen Spieler im freien geselligen Verkehr mit jenen Selbstbewußtsein gewinnen. S. 293: He there saw his young hands shaking off their shyness and awe of the Lord's men.

⁶ will be the making of: wird ihre Stellung begründen.

⁷ the character of the School for courtesy: der gute Ruf (S. 136) der Schule in betreff der Aufmerksamkeit gegen Gäste.

But when a quarter-to-nine struck, and he saw old Thomas beginning to fidget about with the keys in his hand, he thought of the Doctor's parting monition, and stopped the cornopean at once, notwithstanding the loud-voiced remonstrances from all sides; and the crowd scattered away from the close, the eleven all going into the School-house, where supper and beds were provided for them by the Doctor's orders.

Deep had been the consultations at supper as to the order of going in¹, who should bowl the first over², whether it would be best to play steady or freely³; and the youngest hands declared that they shouldn't be a bit nervous, and praised their opponents as the jolliest fellows in the world, except perhaps their old friends the Wellesburn men. How far a little good-nature from their elders will go with the right sort of boys!

The morning had dawned bright and warm, to the intense relief of many an anxious youngster, up betimes to mark the signs of the weather. The eleven went down in a body before breakfast, for a plunge in the cold bath in the corner of the close⁴. The ground was in splendid order, and soon after ten o'clock, before spectators had arrived, all was ready, and two of the Lord's men took their places at the wicket; the School, with the usual liberality

¹ the order of going in. Bei der Partei, welche die innings hat, kommt viel darauf an, in welcher Ordnung sie ihre Spieler zum batting hineinschickt. S. 300: Whose turn is it to go in?

² the first over: der erste Umgang, die ersten vier Bälle, bis over gerufen wird.

³ freely, im Gegensatz zu dem sicheren und bedächtigen Spiel (to play steady), bezeichnet ein etwas riskiertes Spiel aus freier Hand (off-hand), das zwar im Fall des Gelingens größeren Gewinn bringt, aber ebenso leicht die Chancen des Gegners erhöhen kann.

⁴ the cold bath in the corner of the close, befand sich an der westlichen Seite von school close, wo Dunchurch road hinführt, in der Nähe des jetzigen Schwimmbades,

295 of young hands¹, having put their adversaries in first. Old Bailey² stepped up to the wicket, and called play, and the match has begun.

“Oh, well bowled! well bowled, Johnson!” cries the captain³, catching up the ball and sending it high above the rook trees, while the third Marylebone man walks away from the wicket, and old Bailey gravely sets up the middle stump again and puts the bails on.

“How many runs?” Away scamper three boys to the scoring-table, and are back again in a minute amongst the rest of the eleven, who are collected together in a knot between wicket. “Only eighteen runs, and three wickets down!” “Huzza for old Rugby!” sings out⁴ Jack Raggles the long-stop⁵, toughest and burliest of boys, commonly called

¹ with the usual liberality of young hands. Sie verzichteten darauf, daß das Anspiel (the first innings) durch tossing up (S. 88) entschieden wird.

² Old Bailey, ein alter Herr aus London, tritt als umpire an das wicket heran und eröffnet das Spiel, indem er play ausruft.

³ the captain. Der Führer (captain) der out-party hat, während andere den Ball schleudern, die wichtige Rolle des wicket-keeper hinter dem wicket übernommen. Nachdem Johnson einen glücklichen Wurf gethan hat, so daß der Gegner abtreten muß (while the third Marylebone man walks away from the wicket), fängt jener den Ball hinter dem wicket auf (catching up the ball) und wirft ihn, wie dies üblich ist, triumphierend in die Luft (sending it high above the rook trees). Der Schiedsrichter stellt das umgeworfene wicket wieder her; er richtet, da der Ball gerade hindurchgegangen ist, den Mittelstöß (the middle stump) wieder auf und legt die beiden Querhölzer (bails) auf die Stäbe. Vergl. S. 272. Gravely deutet an, daß der bisherige Erfolg der Schüler von Rugby ihn bedeutend macht. In der eingetretenen Pause sind Spieler der out-party in der Mitte der Wurfbahn (between wicket) zusammengetreten, während drei von ihnen zu der Tafel mit den Points (scoring-table) hintraben.

⁴ sings out, siehe S. 244.

⁵ long-stop: Hintermann, ist der Posten hinter dem Thorwart (wicket-keeper) in etwas weiterer Entfernung.

'Swiper¹ Jack;' and forthwith stands on his head, and brandishes his legs in the air in triumph, till the next boy catches hold of his heels, and throws him over on to his back.

"Steady there, don't be such an ass, Jack," says the captain; "we haven't got the best wicket yet². Ah, look out now at cover-point³," adds he, as he sees a long-armed, bare-headed⁴, slashing-looking⁵ player coming to the wicket. "And, Jack, mind your hits⁶; he steals more runs⁷ than any man in England."

And they all find that they have got their work to do now: the new-comer's off-hitting⁸ is tremendous, and his running like a flash of lightning. He is never in his ground, except when his wicket is down⁹.

¹ Swiper: der Säuer. Swipe (swiping) im cricket von einem ausgeholten mächtigen Kernhieb auf gut Glück ohne genaue Berechnung.

² we haven't got the best wicket yet: der beste Schläger (wicket = batsman) der Gegner ist noch nicht dran gewesen.

³ cover-point: der Posten in einer Linie mit dem angegriffenen wicket zur Rechten desselben in einer Entfernung von etwa 15 Metern.

⁴ bare-headed: während die Spieler sonst eine kleine leichte Mütze, oder auch wohl einen Strohhut zu tragen pflegen.

⁵ slashing-looking: nach Kraftstieben aussehend. Slashing, nicht bloß drauflos hauend, sondern überhaupt flüchtig und kräftig, der oder das Erste in seiner Art.

⁶ mind your hits: sieh dich vor, welche Schläge du ihm gibst.

⁷ he steals more runs. To steal: verstoßlenerweise, durch rechtzeitiges Eintreten, durch Schnelligkeit einem etwas abgewinnen, sonst besonders üblich in der Wendung to steal a march upon the enemy: durch schnelles Ausrücken einen Vorsprung gewinnen. Beim Cricket wird es gesagt, wenn die Schläger einen Point durch einen Lauf gewinnen, ohne daß sie eigentlich durch hinlänglich weites Fortschlagen des Balles genügenden Anlaß haben, es zu riskieren, in Fällen von denen man sagen kann: Geschwindigkeit ist keine Fegerei.

⁸ off-hitting. Indem beim Fahren das rechte Pferd off-horse heißt, wird der Ausdruck off-side von der rechten Seite (z. B. eines Hauses) gebraucht. Im Cricket ist off-side (Abseite) die Seite rechts vom Schläger, also links vom Werfenden aus. Off-hitting bezeichnet also ein Schlagen des Balls nach rechts, wozu besonderes Geschick gehört.

⁹ except when his wicket is down. Nur so oft sein wicket

Nothing in the whole game so trying to boys; he has stolen three byes¹ in the first ten minutes, and Jack Raggles is furious, and begins throwing over savagely to the further wicket², until he is sternly stopped by the captain. It is all that young gentleman can do to keep his team steady, but he knows
 296 that everything depends on it, and faces his work bravely. The score creeps up to fifty, the boys begin to look blank, and the spectators, who are now mustering strong, are very silent. The ball flies off his bat to all parts of the field, and he gives no rest and no catches³ to any one. But cricket is full of glorious chances, and the goddess who presides over it loves to bring down the most skilful players. Johnson, the young bowler, is getting wild, and bowls a ball almost wide to the off⁴; the batter steps out

umgeworfen, oder mit dem Ball berührt wird, ist er zur Stelle, so daß die Gegner keinen Vorteil davon haben. Wenn der batsman nicht als Deckung vor dem wicket steht (is not at home, is not in his ground), können die Spieler der out-party auf die angegebene Weise ihn zum Abtreten bringen. Berühren sie aber im Eifer des Gefechts das wicket mit dem Ball, nachdem er seine Stellung vor demselben eingenommen hat, so bleibt es ohne Wirkung.

¹ he has stolen three byes. Bye (bye-ball) ist ein ball, der am wicket vorbei oder über dasselbe hinwegfliegt und vom batsman nicht geschlagen wird. Dieser darf einen Lauf machen, der ihm nach Erklärung des Balls für bye durch den Unparteiischen als bye (abgekürzt b) angeschrieben wird. To steal a bye bezeichnet, daß der batsman, ohne das etwaige Auffangen eines solchen Balls hinter dem wicket abzuwarten, zu laufen riskiert, indem er weiß, daß der andere Schläger ihm halbwegs entgegen kommt.

² begins throwing over savagely to the further wicket. Er wirft den Ball seinen Mitspielern am ferneren wicket zu, in der Hoffnung, daß sie dies ungedeckt damit berühren können. Es läßt sich voraussehen, daß dies von vornherein als unpraktisch gestellte Manöver nichts hilft; daher macht der Führer (captain) demselben ein Ende.

³ catch: ein Fangball, der das Abtreten des Schlägers zur Folge hat.

⁴ almost wide to the off: so daß sich der Ball fast nach links vom Werfenden aus (vom Schläger aus rechts) verläuft. Zu beiden Seiten des zwei Meter langen Schoßmaß (bowling crease), in dessen

and cuts it beautifully to where cover-point is standing very deep, in fact almost off the ground¹. The ball comes skimming and twisting along about three feet from the ground; he rushes at it, and it sticks somehow or other in the fingers of his left hand, to the utter astonishment of himself and the whole field. Such a catch hasn't been made in the close for years, and the cheering is maddening "Pretty cricket²," says the captain, throwing himself on the ground by the deserted wicket with a long breath; he feels that a crisis has passed.

I wish I had space to describe the whole match; how the captain stumped the next man off a leg-shooter³, and bowled slow lobs⁴ to old Mr. Aislabie,

Mitte das Thor (wicket) steht, sind senkrecht dazu Linien gezogen (return creases), um Bälle zu markieren, welche der Schläger nicht gut erreichen kann. Ein Ball, der seitwärts von einer derselben sich verläuft, heißt a wide (ein weiter Ball) und bringt der Schlagpartei einen Point ein; jedoch darf der Schläger ihn fortschlagen. Im vorliegenden Falle verläuft sich der Ball fast nach rechts vom Schläger, so daß dieser genötigt ist, einen Schritt zu machen, um ihn zu treffen. Er schlägt den Ball gerade seitwärts (cuts it) dem rechts vom wicket stehenden cover-point zu.

¹ deep: weitab vom wicket.

² Pretty cricket: schönes Spiel, Anerkennung des abgetretenen Gegners (the deserted wicket).

³ how the Captain stumped the next man off a leg-shooter. Der Captain, hier noch wicket-keeper, machte den nächsten Spieler (Werfer) aus (stumped the next man), indem er nach einem von diesem begangenen Fehler das infolge dessen als verteidigungslos geltende wicket mit dem aufgefangenen Ball berührte. To stump (stump out), eigentlich vom Umstürzen der stumps, oder Abstoßen der bails des ungedeckten wicket mit dem nicht parierten Balle. Statt des Umwerfens gilt als genügend die Berührung der stumps mit dem Balle in der Hand. Shooter heißt ein Ball, der nach dem Aufschlag auf den Boden (pitch) nicht im Bogen springt, sondern am Boden nach dem Ziele weiter schießt (shoots). Da leg-side die linke Seite des Schlägers bezeichnet, ist leg-shooter ein auf diese Seite zurollender Ball. Indem derselbe nicht pariert, dann aber vom wicket-keeper aufgefangen wird, hat dieser das Recht, das wicket damit zu berühren. Off bezeichnet stumping als upshot des begangenen Fehlers.

⁴ bowled slow lobs. Der Captain hat jetzt das bowling über-

who came in for the last wicket. How the Lord's men were out by half-past twelve o'clock for ninety-eight runs¹. How the Captain of the School eleven went in² first to give his men pluck, and scored twenty-five in beautiful style; how Rugby was only four behind in the first innings³. What a glorious dinner they had in the fourth-form School, and how the cover-point hitter⁴ sang the most topping⁵ comic songs, and old Mr. Aislabie made the best speeches that ever were heard, afterwards. But I haven't space, that's the fact, and so you must fancy it all, and carry yourselves on to half-past seven o'clock, when the School are again in, with five wickets down and only thirty-two runs to make to win. The Marylebone men played carelessly in their second
 297 innings, but they are working like horses now to save the match.

There is much healthy, hearty, happy life scattered up and down the close; but the group to which I beg to call your especial attention is there, on the slope of the island⁶, which looks towards the cricket-ground. It consists of three figures; two are seated on a bench, and one on the ground at their feet. The first, a tall, slight, and rather gaunt man with a bushy eyebrow and a dry humorous smile, is evi-

nommen und macht ausnahmsweise langsame Källe (underhand) mit hoher Wurfkurve, was der Gegner gewöhnlich nicht erwartet, da fast bowling ziemlich allgemein üblich ist. Vergl. S. 272: to bowl slow twisters.

¹ for ninety-eight runs: mit 98 Points, eigentlich auf Grund derselben.

² went in. To go in: eintreten, stehender Ausdruck von den batsmen der in-party.

³ the first innings: der erste Gang, das erste Spiel (als in-party). Bei einem match hat jede Partei zwei innings.

⁴ the cover-point hitter, von dem es hieß the batter steps out and cuts it beautifully to where cover-point is standing, etc.

⁵ topping: unübertrefflich.

⁶ the island, siehe S. 82.

dently a clergyman. He is carelessly dressed, and looks rather used up¹, which isn't much to be wondered at, seeing that he has just finished six weeks of examination work²; but there he basks, and spreads himself out in the evening sun, bent on enjoying life, though he doesn't quite know what to do with his arms and legs. Surely it is our friend the young master³, whom we have had glimpses of before, but his face has gained a great deal since we last came across him.

And by his side, in white flannel shirt and trousers, straw hat, the captain's belt⁴, and the untanned yellow cricket shoes which all the eleven wear, sits a strapping figure near six feet high, with ruddy tanned face and whiskers, curly brown hair and a laughing dancing eye. He is leaning forward with his elbows resting on his knees, and dandling his favourite bat, with which he has made thirty or forty runs to-day, in his strong brown hands. It is Tom Brown, grown into a young man nineteen years old, a præpostor and captain of the eleven, spending his last day as a Rugby boy, and let us hope as much wiser as he is bigger since we last had the pleasure of coming across him.

¹ used up, eigentlich slang: abgespannt, mitgenommen (worn out).

² six weeks of examination work. Die Klassen werden am Schluß des Semesters von dem Direktor selbst, oder von Lehrern, denen er dies überträgt, in ihren Benken examiniert. Häufig läßt man dazu auch Lehrer anderer Schulen oder Gelehrte der Universität kommen.

³ the young master, siehe S. 179 f.

⁴ the captain's belt. Der Führer und Leiter der eleven, der diese Stellung dauernd behauptet, also nicht zu einem einzelnen match gewählt wird, trifft alle Anordnungen für das Spiel seiner Partei und teilt auch die erforderlichen Rüsself aus, so gut wie der Hauptmann einer Kompanie. Er trägt als Abzeichen seiner Würde einen stattlichen, oft gestickten Gürtel, der ihm in der Regel wegen seiner Verdienste bezeugt ist. In den Verzeichnissen der cricket requisites werden aufgeführt belts (gewöhnliche Gürtel für Cricket-Spieler) und belts for presentation.

And at their feet on the warm dry ground, similarly dressed, sits Arthur, Turkish fashion¹, with his bat across his knees. He too is no longer a boy, less of a boy in fact than Tom, if one may judge
 298 from the thoughtfulness of his face, which is somewhat paler too than one could wish; but his figure, though slight, is well knit² and active, and all his old timidity has disappeared, and is replaced by silent quaint fun, with which his face twinkles all over, as he listens to the broken talk between the other two, in which he joins every now and then.

All three are watching the game eagerly, and joining in the cheering which follows every good hit. It is pleasing to see the easy, friendly footing which the pupils are on with their master, perfectly respectful, yet with no reserve and nothing forced in their intercourse. Tom has clearly abandoned the old theory of "natural enemies³," in this case at any rate.

But it is time to listen to what they are saying, and see what we can gather out of it.

"I don't object to your theory," says the master, "and I allow you have made a fair case for yourself. But now, in such books as Aristophanes for instance, you've been reading a play this half with the Doctor, haven't you?"

"Yes, the Knights⁴," answered Tom.

"Well, I'm sure you would have enjoyed the wonderful humour of it twice as much if you had taken more pains with your scholarship⁵."

¹ Turkish fashion; after the Turkish fashion: wie ein Türke mit untergeschlagenen Beinen. ² well knit: fest gefügt, stark gebaut, ein ursprünglich Shakespearescher, aber sehr gewöhnlicher Ausdruck.

³ natural enemies, siehe S. 278, wo East diese Ansicht als eine von Tom früher mit ihm geteilte entwickelt.

⁴ the Knights: die Ritter, Komödie des Aristophanes (siehe S. 265), die 424 in Athen aufgeführt wurde.

⁵ scholarship: philologische Gelehrsamkeit, grammatisches Wissen und darauf beruhendes Verständnis, also hier zu übersetzen: Grammatik.

"Well, sir, I don't believe any boy in the form enjoyed the sets-to between Cleon and the Sausage-seller¹ more than I did—eh, Arthur?" said Tom, giving him a stir with his foot.

"Yes, I must say he did," said Arthur. "I think, sir, you've hit upon the wrong book there."

"Not a bit of it," said the master. "Why, in those very passages of arms², how can you thoroughly appreciate them unless you are master of the weapons? and the weapons are the language, which you, Brown, have never half worked at; and so, as I say, you must have lost all the delicate shades of meaning³ which make the best part of the fun."

"Oh! well played—bravo, Johnson!" shouted Arthur, dropping his bat and clapping furiously, and Tom joined in with a "Bravo, Johnson!" which might have been heard at the chapel.

"Eh! what was it? I didn't see," inquired the master; "they only got one run, I thought?"

"No, but such a ball, three-quarters length and coming straight for his leg bail⁴. Nothing but that

¹ Cleon and the Sausage-seller. In den eben erwähnten gegen Kleon gerichteten „Kittern“ geht Aristophanes davon aus, daß die rücksichtslose Demokratie dieses Mannes nur gestürzt werden könne, wenn ihm ein noch gemeinerer Demagoge entgegentrete und ihm die Gunst des Volkes streitig mache. Einen solchen stellt der Dichter ihm gegenüber in der Person eines Wurfthändlers, und beide überbieten sich vor dem personifizierten Volke teils in Versprechungen und Geschenken, teils in gegenseitigen Anklagen und Verleumdungen, bis Kleon unterliegt. Arnold hatte lange eine starke Abneigung gegen Aristophanes, las selbst dessen Werke erst im Jahre 1835 und führte sie noch später zum Teil als Schullektüre ein, was übrigens füglich hätte unterbleiben können.

² passages of arms: Waffengänge; sets-to: Kämpfe (allgemeiner).

³ the delicate shades of meaning: die feinen Nuancen des Gedankens. Vergl. weiter unten the delicate play.

⁴ three-quarter's length and coming straight for his leg bail. Der Ball war ganz regelmäßig drei Viertel der Strecke weit zum Aufsetzen (pitch) geschleudert und sprang dann gerade auf das Quersbölchen (bail) zur Linken des Schlagenden (leg-side) los.

turn of the wrist could have saved him, and he drew it away to leg¹ for a safe one. Bravo, Johnson!"

"How well they are bowling, though," said Arthur; "they don't mean to be beat, I can see."

"There now," struck in the master, "you see that's just what I have been preaching this half-hour. The delicate play is the true thing. I don't understand cricket, so I don't enjoy those fine draws² which you tell me are the best play, though when you or Raggles hit a ball hard away for six I am as delighted as any one. Don't you see the analogy?"

"Yes, sir," answered Tom, looking up roguishly, "I see; only the question remains whether I should have got most good by understanding Greek particles or cricket thoroughly. I'm such a thick³, I never should have had time for both."

"I see you are an incorrigible," said the master with a chuckle; "but I refute you by an example. Arthur there has taken in⁴ Greek and cricket too."

"Yes, but no thanks to him⁵; Greek came natural to him. Why, when he first came I remember he used to read Herodotus⁶ for pleasure as I did Don

¹ he drew it away to leg: er wandte den Ball nach links, indem er, statt zu schlagen, nur das Ballholz in Parade entgegenhielt, den Ball dagegen anspringen ließ und ihn durch Drehung des Handgelenkes (turn of the wrist), die sich dem Ballholz mittheilte, nach links ablenkte. For a safe one ließe sich fassen: als sicherer Kunde (um sicher zu gehen); doch liegt beim cricket näher der Gebrauch wie im folgenden for six (runs), S. 303: for five. Es kommt dazu, daß der Ausdruck a safe one (gewöhnlich gesprochen a safe un) aus dem Wettrennen her geläufig ist; derselbe bedeutet ein Pferd, gegen das man sicher wettet, weil man insgeheim Nachricht erhalten, daß es am Rennen nicht theilnimmt.

² fine draws: feine Wendungen, dem Verbum to draw entsprechend.

³ a thick, siehe S. 128.

⁴ to take in: teilnehmen, sich betheiligen an einem (fakultativen) Lehrgegenstande.

⁵ no thanks to him: er verdient gar kein Lob deshalb.

⁶ Heröd'otüs, ein griechischer Historiker um 440 v. Chr., der sich

Quixote¹, and couldn't have made a false concord² if he'd tried ever so hard—and then I looked after his cricket.”

“Out! Bailey has given him out³—do you see, 300 Tom?” cries Arthur. “How foolish of them to run so hard.”

“Well, it can't be helped, he has played very well. Whose turn is it to go in⁴?”

“I don't know; they've got your list in the tent.”

“Let's go and see,” said Tom, rising; but at this moment Jack Raggles and two or three more came running to the island moat⁵.

“Oh, Brown, mayn't I go in next?” shouts the Swiper.

“Whose name is next on the list?” says the Captain.

“Winter's, and then Arthur's,” answers the boy who carries it; “but there are only twenty-six runs to get, and no time to lose. I heard Mr. Aislabie say that the stumps must be drawn⁶ at a quarter past eight exactly.”

“Oh, do let the Swiper go in,” chorus⁷ the boys: so Tom yields against his better judgment.

“I dare say now I've lost the match by this nonsense,” he says, as he sits down again; “they'll be sure to get Jack's wicket in three or four minutes;

in seinen nach den neun Rufen benannten Geschichtsbüchern des ionischen Dialekts bedient hat und dadurch Anfängern noch besondere Schwierigkeiten darbietet.

¹ Don Quixote (kwik'süt), satirischer Ritterroman von Miguel de Cervantes Saavedra (1547—1616).

² concord, siehe S. 221.

³ Out! Bailey has given him out: Er ist ab oder aus (muß abtreten); Bailey als Unparteiischer hat ihn für austretend erklärt. To give out, stehender Ausdruck von den Entscheidungen beim cricket.

⁴ to go in, siehe S. 294.

⁵ the island moat, siehe S. 297.

⁶ the stumps must be drawn: die Stäbe der wickets müssen herausgezogen, das Spiel also eingestellt werden.

⁷ to chorus: im Chor schreien.

however, you'll have the chance, sir, of seeing a hard hit or two," adds he, smiling, and turning to the master.

"Come, none of your irony, Brown," answers the master. "I'm beginning to understand the game scientifically. What a noble game it is too!"

"Isn't it? But it's more than a game. It's an institution¹," said Tom.

"Yes," said Arthur, "the birthright of British boys, old and young, as *habeas corpus*² and trial by jury are of British men."

"The discipline and reliance on one another which it teaches is so valuable, I think," went on the master, "it ought to be such an unselfish game. It merges the individual in the eleven; he doesn't play that he may win, but that his side may."

301 "That's very true," said Tom, "and that's why football and cricket, now one comes to think of it, are such much better games than fives' or hare-and-hounds, or any others where the object is to come in first or to win for oneself, and not that one's side may win."

"And then the Captain of the eleven!" said the master, "what a post is his in our School-world! almost as hard as the Doctor's; requiring skill and gentleness and firmness, and I know not what other rare qualities."

"Which don't he wish he may get³?" said Tom, laughing; "at any rate he hasn't got them yet, or he wouldn't have been such a flat to-night as to let Jack Raggles go in out of his turn."

¹ an institution: eine Volkseinrichtung.

² Die Habeas Corpus Act aus dem Jahre 1679 bestimmt, daß niemand ohne richterlichen Befehl verhaftet werden darf, und daß der Verhaftete innerhalb einer bestimmten Frist vor Gericht gestellt werden muß. Trial by jury: Aburteilung durch Geschworne, kürzer: Schwurgericht.

³ Which don't he wish, etc.: die zu erlangen er ganz froh sein könnte. Vergl. S. 109.

"Ah! the Doctor never would have done that," said Arthur, demurely. "Tom, you've a great deal to learn yet in the art of ruling."

"Well, I wish you'd tell the Doctor so, then, and get him to let me stop till I'm twenty. I don't want to leave, I'm sure."

"What a sight it is," broke in the master, "the Doctor as a ruler. Perhaps ours is the only little corner of British Empire which is thoroughly, wisely, and strongly ruled just now. I'm more and more thankful every day of my life that I came here to be under him."

"So am I, I'm sure," said Tom; "and more and more sorry that I've got¹ to leave."

"Every place and thing one sees here reminds one of some wise act of his," went on the master. "This island now—you remember the time, Brown, when it was laid out in small gardens, and cultivated by frost-bitten fags in February and March?"

"Of course I do," said Tom; "didn't I hate spending two hours in the afternoons grubbing in the tough dirt with the stump of a fives'-bat²? But turf-cart³ was good fun enough."

"I dare say it was, but it was always leading to 302 fights with the townspeople; and then the stealing flowers out of all the gardens in Rugby for the Easter show⁴ was abominable."

"Well, so it was," said Tom, looking down, "but we fags couldn't help ourselves. But what has that to do with the Doctor's ruling?"

"A great deal, I think," said the master; "what brought island fagging to an end?"

"Why, the Easter Speeches were put off till Mid-

¹ that I've got to leave: that I have to leave.

² a fives'-bat, siehe S. 161.

³ turf-cart: das Rasenfarren (in a cart).

⁴ Easter-show = Easter Speeches, siehe S. 292.

summer," said Tom, "and the sixth had the gymnastic poles¹ put up here."

"Well, and who changed the time of the Speeches, and put the idea of gymnastic poles into the heads of their worships the sixth form²?" said the master.

"The Doctor, I suppose," said Tom. "I never thought of that."

"Of course you didn't," said the master, "or else, fag as you were, you would have shouted with the whole school against putting down old customs. And that's the way that all the Doctor's reforms have been carried out when he has been left to himself—quietly and naturally, putting a good thing in the place of a bad, and letting the bad die out; no wavering and no hurry—the best thing that could be done for the time being, and patience for the rest."

"Just Tom's own way," chimed in Arthur, nudging Tom with his elbow, "driving a nail where it will go³;" to which allusion Tom answered by a sly kick.

"Exactly so," said the master, innocent of the allusion and bye-play⁴.

Meantime Jack Raggles, with his sleeves tucked up above his great brown elbows, scorning pads⁵ and gloves, has presented himself at the wicket; and having run one for a forward drive⁶ of Johnson's, is
303 about to receive his first ball. There are only twenty-

¹ gymnastic poles, Turngerät. Auf der mit Bäumen bewachsenen sogenannten Insel (S. 82) sah man noch Spuren des früheren Turnplatzes.

² their worships the sixth form: die gestrengen Herren Primaner.

³ driving a nail, etc. Vergl. S. 206.

⁴ bye-play (by-play): stummes Spiel (auf der Bühne).

⁵ pad: eine gepolsterte Weinschiene, deren sich der Schläger gewöhnlich nebst Handschuhen bedient.

⁶ for a forward drive: auf Grund eines nach vorn auf den Werfenden zu geschlagenen Balles. Beide Schläger sind einmal gelaufen (having run one = one run), so daß Jack Raggles jetzt ans Schlagen kommt.

four runs to make, and four wickets to go down; a winning match¹ if they play decently steady. The ball is a very swift one, and rises fast, catching Jack on the outside of the thigh, and bounding away as if from india-rubber, while they run two for a leg-bye² amidst great applause, and shouts from Jack's many admirers. The next ball is a beautifully pitched ball for the outer stump³, which the reckless and unfeeling Jack catches hold of, and hits right round to leg for five, while the applause becomes deafening: only seventeen runs to get with four wickets—the game is all but ours!

It is "over"⁴ now, and Jack walks swaggering about his wicket, with the bat over his shoulder, while Mr. Aislabie holds a short parley with his men. Then the cover-point hitter, that cunning man, goes on to bowl slow twisters. Jack waves his hand triumphantly towards the tent, as much as to say, "See if I don't finish it all off now in three hits."

Alas, my son Jack! the enemy is too old for thee. The first ball of the over Jack steps out and meets⁵, swiping with all his force. If he had only allowed for⁶ the twist! but he hasn't, and so the ball

¹ a winning match: eine Partie, die gewonnen werden muß.

² for a leg-bye. Indem der nicht in gerader Linie auf das Mal zu geworfene Ball das Bein des Schlägers trifft, wird er zu einem leg-bye, auf Grund dessen (for, wie so eben for a forward drive) beide laufen.

³ the outer stump. Wie oft bezeichnet outer die Seite rechts vom Schläger als die äußere oder fernere; den auf den rechten Stab des Males zuspringenden Ball schlägt der Verteidiger im Bogen (round) nach links, so daß ein fünfmaliger Lauf (for five) gewonnen wird.

⁴ over, vergl. S. 294. Nachdem vier Würfe gethan sind, erfolgt ein Umgang, indem der Werfer mit der ganzen out-party nach der anderen Seite hinübergeht. Der schon geschilderte gefährliche Gegner tritt auf (goes on) und versucht es mit slow twisters, siehe S. 272.

⁵ The first ball — meets. Indem Jack vortritt, pariert er den ersten der vier neuen Würfe (the first ball of the over) mit wuchtigem Schlag. (Swiping, siehe S. 295.)

⁶ allowed for, made an allowance for: wenn er nur auf die

back into the close, and everybody was beginning to cry out for another country-dance, encouraged by the success of the night before, the young master, who was just leaving the close, stopped him, and asked him to come up to tea at half-past eight, adding, "I won't keep you more than half-an-hour, and ask Arthur to come up too."

"I'll come up with you directly, if you'll let me," said Tom, "for I feel rather melancholy, and not quite up to¹ the country-dance and supper with the rest."

"Do by all means," said the master; "I'll wait here for you."

So Tom went off to get his boots and things² from the tent, to tell Arthur of the invitation, and to speak to his second in command about stopping the dancing and shutting up the close as soon as it grew dusk. Arthur promised to follow as soon as he had had a dance. So Tom handed his things over to the man in charge of the tent, and walked quietly away to the gate where the master was waiting, and the two took their way together up the Hillmorton road³.

Of course they found the master's house locked up, and all the servants away in the close, about this time no doubt footing it away⁴ on the grass with extreme delight to themselves, and in utter oblivion of the unfortunate bachelor their master, whose one enjoyment in the shape of meals was his "dish of tea" (as our grandmothers called it) in the evening; and the phrase was apt in his case, for he always poured his out into the saucer before drinking. Great

¹ up to: aufgelegt zu, Pfeffer.

² to get his boots and things. Im Zelt wird das Cridentkostüm angelegt.

³ Hillmorton (Hill Morton) road, die von der Nordseite der Schule aus nach Osten führt. Vergl. S. 93, wo südöstlich, statt südwestlich, zu verbessern ist.

⁴ footing it away: darauf los tanzend. Über it vergl. S. 117: go it.

was the good man's horror at finding himself shut out of his own house. Had he been alone, he would have treated it as a matter of course, and would have strolled contentedly up and down his gravel-walk until some one came home; but he was hurt at the stain on his character of host, especially as the guest was a pupil. However, the guest seemed to think it a great joke, and presently as they poked about round the house, mounted a wall, from which he could reach a passage window: the window, as it turned out, was not bolted, so in another minute Tom was in the house and down at the front door, which he opened from inside. The master chuckled grimly at this burglarious entry, and insisted on leaving the hall-door and two of the front windows open, to frighten the truants on their return; and then the two set about foraging for tea, in which operation the master was much at fault¹, having the faintest possible idea of where to find anything, and being moreover wondrously short-sighted; but Tom by a sort of instinct knew the right cupboards in the kitchen and pantry, and soon managed to place on the snuggery² table better materials for a meal than had appeared there probably during the reign of his tutor, who was then and there initiated, amongst other things, into the excellence of that mysterious condiment, a dripping-cake³. The cake was newly baked, and all rich and flaky; Tom had found it reposing in the cook's private cupboard, awaiting her return; and as a warning to her, they finished it to the last crumb. The kettle sang away merrily on the hob⁴ of the snuggery, for, notwithstanding the

¹ to be at fault: in Verlegenheit sein, sich nicht zu helfen wissen; eigentlich von Jagdhunden: auf falscher Fährte sein.

² snuggery: die Bohnstube, als gemütlicher Aufenthalt.

³ a dripping cake: ein Schmalzkuchen (Hoppe). Ähnlich ist muffins, S. 67. Rich: fett.

⁴ hobs (*des plaques de cheminée*): Raminvorsprünge, zwei kleine

time of year, they lighted a fire, throwing both the windows wide open at the same time. The heap of books and papers were pushed away to the other end of the table, and the great solitary engraving of King's College Chapel¹ over the mantelpiece looked less stiff than usual, as they settled themselves down in the twilight to the serious drinking of tea.

After some talk on the match, and other indifferent subjects, the conversation came naturally back
307 to Tom's approaching departure, over which he began again to make his moan.

"Well, we shall all miss you quite as much as you will miss us," said the master. "You are the Nestor² of the School now, are you not?"

"Yes, ever since East left," answered Tom.

"By the bye³, have you heard from him?"

"Yes, I had a letter in February, just before he started for India to join his regiment."

"He will make a capital officer."

"Aye, won't he!" said Tom, brightening; "no fellow could handle boys better, and I suppose soldiers are very like boys. And he'll never tell them to go where he won't go himself. No mistake about that—a braver fellow never walked."

"His year in the sixth will have taught him a good deal that will be useful to him now."

"So it will," said Tom, staring into the fire. "Poor dear Harry," he went on, "how well I remember the day we were put out of the twenty⁴. How he rose

herbartige Erhöhungen an den inneren Seitenwänden des Kamins, zwischen denen sich der Feuerrost (grate) befindet.

¹ King's College Chapel. Die zu King's College gehörende Kirche ist das schönste gotische Gebäude in Cambridge.

² Nestor: der hochbejahrteste, d. h. einfach: der älteste Schüler.

³ By the bye, *à propos*: was ich noch sagen wollte, es fällt mir gerade ein.

⁴ put out of the twenty: aus der Unterprima in die Oberprima versetzt. Vergl. Einleitung S. XXII.

to the situation, and burnt his cigar-cases, and gave away his pistols, and pondered on the constitutional authority of the sixth, and his new duties to the Doctor, and the fifth form, and the fags. Aye, and no fellow ever acted up to them better, though he was always a people's man—for the fags, and against constituted authorities. He couldn't help that, you know. I'm sure the Doctor must have liked him?" said Tom, looking up inquiringly.

"The Doctor sees the good in every one, and appreciates it," said the master, dogmatically¹; "but I hope East will get a good colonel. He won't do if he can't respect those above him. How long it took him, even here, to learn the lesson of obeying."

"Well, I wish I were alongside of him," said Tom. "If I can't be at Rugby, I want to be at 308 work in the world, and not dawdling away three years at Oxford."

"What do you mean by 'at work in the world?'" said the master, pausing, with his lips close to his saucerful of tea, and peering at Tom over it.

"Well, I mean real work; one's profession; whatever one will have really to do, and make one's living by. I want to be doing some real good, feeling that I am not only at play in the world," answered Tom, rather puzzled to find out himself what he really did mean.

"You are mixing up two very different things in your head, I think, Brown," said the master, putting down the empty saucer, "and you ought to get clear about them. You talk of 'working to get your living,' and 'doing some real good in the world,' in the same breath. Now, you may be getting a very good living in a profession, and yet doing no good at all in the world, but quite the contrary, at the same time. Keep the latter before you as your only ob-

¹ dogmatically: bestimmt.

ject, and you will be right, whether you make a living or not; but if you dwell on the other, you'll very likely drop into mere money-making, and let the world take care of itself for good or evil. Don't be in a hurry about finding your work in the world for yourself; you are not old enough to judge for yourself yet, but just look about you in the place you find yourself in, and try to make things a little better and honester there. You'll find plenty to keep your hand in¹ at Oxford, or wherever else you go. And don't be led away to think this part of the world important, and that unimportant. Every corner of the world is important. No man knows whether this part or that is most so, but every man may do some honest work in his own corner." And then the good man went on to talk wisely to Tom of the sort of work which he might take up as undergraduate²; and warned him of the prevalent University sins, and explained to him the many and great differences between University and School life; till the twilight changed into darkness, and they heard the truant servants stealing in by the back entrance.

"I wonder where Arthur can be," said Tom at last, looking at his watch: "why, it's nearly half-past nine already."

"Oh, he is comfortably at supper with the eleven, forgetful of his oldest friends," said the master. "Nothing has given me greater pleasure," he went on, "than your friendship for him; it has been the making of you both."

"Of me, at any rate," answered Tom; "I should never have been here now but for him. It was the luckiest chance in the world that sent him to Rugby, and made him my chum."

¹ to keep your hand in, siehe S. 161.

² undergraduate: Student, im Unterschied von den Graduierten (Promovierten).

"Why do you talk of lucky chances?" said the master; "I don't know that there are any such things in the world; at any rate there was neither luck nor chance in that matter."

Tom looked at him inquiringly, and he went on. "Do you remember when the Doctor lectured you and East at the end of one half-year, when you were in the shell, and had been getting into all sorts of scrapes?"

"Yes, well enough," said Tom; "it was the half-year before Arthur came."

"Exactly so," answered the master. "Now, I was with him a few minutes afterwards, and he was in great distress about you two. And, after some talk, we both agreed that you in particular wanted some object in the School beyond games and mischief; for it was quite clear that you never would make the regular school work your first object. And so the Doctor, at the beginning of the next half-year, looked out the best of the new boys, and separated you and East, and put the young boy into your study, in the hope that when you had somebody to ³¹⁰ lean on you, you would begin to stand a little steadier yourself, and get manliness and thoughtfulness. And I can assure you he has watched the experiment ever since with great satisfaction. Ah! not one of you boys will ever know the anxiety you have given him, or the care with which he has watched over every step in your school lives."

Up to this time, Tom had never wholly given in to¹ or understood the Doctor. At first he had thoroughly feared him. For some years, as I have tried to show, he had learnt to regard him with love and respect, and to think him a very great and wise and good man. But, as regarded his own position

¹ given in to: sich widerstandslos und mit ganzer Seele hingeben.

in the School, of which he was no little¹ proud, Tom had no idea of giving any one credit for it but himself²; and, truth to tell, was a very self-conceited young gentleman on the subject. He was wont to boast that he had fought his own way fairly up the school, and had never made up to³, or been taken up by any big fellow or master, and that it was now quite a different place from what it was when he first came. And, indeed, though he didn't actually boast of it, yet in his secret soul he did to a great extent believe, that the great reform in the School had been owing quite as much to himself as to any one else. Arthur, he acknowledged, had done him good, and taught him a good deal; so had other boys in different ways, but they had not had the same means of influence on the School in general; and as for the Doctor, why, he was a splendid master, but every one knew that masters could do very little out of school hours. In short, he felt on terms of equality with his chief, so far as the social state of the School was concerned, and thought that the Doctor would find it no easy matter to get on without him. Moreover, his school Toryism⁴ was still strong, and he looked still with some jealousy on the Doctor, as somewhat of a fanatic in the matter of

311 change; and thought it very desirable for the School that he should have some wise person (such as himself) to look sharply after vested School-rights, and see that nothing was done to the injury of the republic without due protest.

It was a new light to him to find, that, besides

¹ no little, ungewöhnlich statt not a little.

² Tom had no idea of giving any one credit for it but himself: Tom dachte gar nicht daran, daß er seine Stellung in der Schule irgend jemand verdankte (zuschreiben mußte), als sich selbst.

³ to make up to one: sich an jemand heran-schmeißen (heran-machen). To take up: heran ziehen.

⁴ school Toryism: konservativer Standpunkt als Schüler.

teaching the sixth, and governing and guiding the whole School, editing classics, and writing histories, the great Head-master had found time in those busy years to watch over the career even of him, Tom Brown, and his particular friends,—and, no doubt, of fifty other boys at the same time; and all this without taking the least credit to himself, or seeming to know, or let anyone else know, that he ever thought particularly of any boys at all.

However, the Doctor's victory was complete from that moment over Tom Brown at any rate. He gave way at all points, and the enemy marched right over him, cavalry, infantry, and artillery, the land transport corps¹, and the camp followers². It had taken eight long years to do it, but now it was done thoroughly, and there wasn't a corner of him left which didn't believe in the Doctor. Had he returned to school again, and the Doctor begun the half-year by abolishing fagging, and foot-ball, and the Saturday half-holiday, or all or any of the most cherished school institutions, Tom would have supported him with the blindest faith. And so, after a half confession of his previous shortcomings, and sorrowful adieus to his tutor, from whom he received two beautifully bound volumes of the Doctor's Sermons, as a parting present, he marched down to the School-house, a hero-worshipper³, who would have satisfied the soul of Thomas Carlyle himself.

There he found the eleven at high jinks⁴ after supper, Jack Raggles shouting comic songs, and performing feats of strength; and was greeted by a chorus of mingled remonstrance at his desertion, and ³¹² joy at his reappearance. And falling in with⁵ the

¹ the land transport corps: das Armeefuhrwesen, der Train.

² the camp followers: der Truß, die Schlachtenbummler.

³ a hero-worshipper: siehe S. 2.

⁴ at high jinks: in höchster Hebelität.

⁵ to fall in with: einstimmen in.

humour of the evening, was soon as great a boy as all the rest; and at ten o'clock was chaired¹ round the quadrangle, on one of the hall benches, borne aloft by the eleven, shouting in chorus, "For he's a jolly good fellow²," while old Thomas, in a melting mood, and the other School-house servants, stood looking on.

And the next morning after breakfast he squared up all the cricketing accounts, went round to his tradesmen and other acquaintance, and said his hearty good-byes, and by twelve o'clock was in the train³, and away for London, no longer a school-boy; and divided in his thoughts between hero-worship, honest regrets over the long stage of his life which was now slipping out of sight behind him, and hopes and resolves for the next stage, upon which he was entering with all the confidence of a young traveller.

Chapter IX.

Finis.

"Strange friend, past, present, and to be;
Loved deeper, darker understood;
Behold, I dream a dream of good,
And mingle all the world with thee."

TENNYSON⁴.

In the summer of 1842, our hero stopped once again at the well-known station: and, leaving his bag and fishing-rod with a porter, walked slowly and

¹ to chair: auf einem Stuhle (hier auf einer Bank, die auf den Schultern ruht) hoch im Triumph umhertragen.

² For he's a jolly good fellow, And so are all of us: üblicher Chorgesang nach einem Toast, der benutzt ist in den Schlussversen des Liedes A Glass is Good.

³ in the train. Als der Held unserer Erzählung zuerst nach Rugby fuhr, hatte diese Stadt noch keine Eisenbahnverbindung mit London. Seitdem war die London and North Western Railway erbaut.

⁴ Tennyson, in Memoriam, Schluß des Gedichtes 119.

sadly up towards the town¹. It was now July. He had rushed away from Oxford the moment that term² was over, for a fishing ramble in Scotland with two college friends³, and had been for three weeks living on oatcake⁴, mutton-hams, and whiskey, in the wildest parts of Skye. They had descended one sultry evening on the little inn at Kyle Rhea⁵ ferry⁵, and while Tom and another of the party put their tackle together and began exploring the stream for a sea-trout for supper, the third strolled into the house to arrange for their entertainment. Presently he came out in a loose blouse⁶ and slippers, a short pipe in his mouth, and an old newspaper in his hand, and threw himself on the heathery scrub which met the shingle⁷, within easy hail of the fishermen. There he lay, the picture of free-and-easy, loafing, hand-to-mouth young England⁸, "improving his mind," as he shouted to them, by the perusal of the fortnight-old weekly paper, soiled with the marks of toddy-glasses⁹

¹ the town, Rugby.

² term; Trinity term: das Sommertrimester bis zum 1. Dienstag im Juli. Vergl. S. 5.

³ college friends: Universitätsfreunde, da jede der beiden alten Landesuniversitäten aus lauter selbständigen colleges besteht. Oxford zählt deren 19, und außerdem 4 sogenannte halls.

⁴ oatcake (oatmeal cakes): ganz dünner, in der Asche gebackener Kuchen aus Hafermehl, dem jüdischen Magen ähnlich, der in Schottland nicht nur von den Ärmeren gegessen wird. Es heißt davon the land of cakes. Mutton-hams: geräucherte Hammelsteulen, und whiskey: sehr starker Kornbranntwein, gehören gleichfalls zu den schottischen Lebensmitteln.

⁵ Kyle Rhea ferry, an der östlichsten Spitze der Insel Skye, wo sie nur durch einen schmalen Meeresarm von Schottland getrennt ist. Tackle: Angelgerät, siehe S. 171.

⁶ blouse, *la blouse*. A short pipe: eine kurze Thonpfeife.

⁷ which met the shingle: das Heidegestrüpp, welches sich bis an das Geröll erstreckte. Within easy hail: in bequemer Rufweite.

⁸ free-and-easy, etc.: das ungenierte, landdurchstreifende, flott in den Tag hineinlebende Jung-England. Improving his mind: den Geist bildend.

⁹ toddy: ein ursprünglich indischer, vom Palmwein gebrauchter

and tobacco-ashes, the legacy of the last traveller, which he had hunted out from the kitchen of the little hostelry; and being a youth of a communicative turn of mind, began imparting the contents to the fishermen as he went on.

"What a bother they are making¹ about these wretched Corn-laws², here's three or four columns full of nothing but sliding-scales and fixed duties³.—Hang this tobacco, it's always going out!—Ah, here's something better—a splendid match between Kent and England⁴, Brown! Kent winning by three wickets. Felix fifty-six runs without a chance, and not out!"

Tom, intent on a fish which had risen at him⁵ twice, answered only with a grunt.

"Anything about the Goodwood⁶?" called out the third man.

"Rory-o-More drawn⁷. Butterfly colt amiss," shouted the student.

"Just my luck," grumbled the inquirer, jerking his

Ausdruck, ist in Schottland üblich für grog; man sagt gewöhnlich whiskey-toddy, gin-toddy. To hunt out: aufgabeln.

¹ What a bother they are making: was für Lärm sie schlagen.

² Corn-laws. Gegen den mit diesem Namen bezeichneten Schutz Zoll auf Getreide, der aus dem Jahre 1828 herrührte, bildete sich 1839 ein Verein der Freihändler, Anti-Corn-Law League, dessen Agitation schließlich 1846 zu der Aufhebung des Kornzolls unter dem Ministerium Sir Robert Peel führte.

³ sliding-scales and fixed duties. Statt des ursprünglichen festen Eingangszolles auf Getreide (fixed duty) wurde 1838 eine nach den Getreidepreisen variierende Skala (sliding scale) eingeführt und 1842 bei Ermäßigung der Kornzölle beibehalten.

⁴ a match between Kent and England: eine Cricketpartie der Grafschaft Kent gegen ganz England.

⁵ risen at him, siehe S. 173.

⁶ the Goodwood races. Diese werden jährlich in Sussex in der Nähe von Goodwood Park, einer Besitzung des Herzogs von Richmond, abgehalten.

⁷ drawn: zurückgezogen. Amis: krank.

flies off the water, and throwing¹ again with a heavy sullen splash, and frightening Tom's fish.

"I say, can't you throw lighter over there? we ain't fishing for grampuses²," shouted Tom across the stream.

"Hullo, Brown! here's something for you," called 314 out the reading man next moment. "Why, your old master, Arnold of Rugby, is dead."

Tom's hand stopped half-way in his cast, and his line and flies went all tangling round and round his rod; you might have knocked him over with a feather. Neither of his companions took any notice of him luckily; and with a violent effort he set to work mechanically to disentangle his line. He felt completely carried off his moral and intellectual legs³, as if he had lost his standing-point in the invisible world. Besides which, the deep loving loyalty which he felt for his old leader made the shock intensely painful. It was the first great wrench of his life, the first gap which the angel Death had made in his circle, and he felt numbed, and beaten down, and spiritless. Well, well! I believe it was good for him and for many others in like case; who had to learn by that loss, that the soul of man cannot stand or lean upon any human prop, however strong, and wise, and good; but that He upon whom alone it can stand and lean will knock away all such props in His own wise and merciful way, until there is no ground or stay left but Himself, the Rock of Ages⁴, upon whom alone a sure foundation for every soul of man is laid.

As he wearily laboured at his line, the thought

¹ throwing, his fly: seine künstliche Fliege.

² grampus, siehe S. 280.

³ carried off his moral and intellectual legs: er war geistig und sittlich verloren geworden.

⁴ the Rock of Ages. Psalm, 18, 2: The Lord is my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer.

struck him, "It may all be false, a mere newspaper lie," and he strode up to the recumbent smoker.

"Let me look at the paper," said he.

"Nothing else in it," answered the other, handing it up to him listlessly.—"Hullo, Brown! what's the matter, old fellow—ain't you well?"

"Where is it?" said Tom, turning over the leaves, his hands trembling, and his eyes swimming, so that he could not read.

315 "What? What are you looking for?" said his friend, jumping up and looking over his shoulder.

"That—about Arnold," said Tom.

"Oh, here," said the other, putting his finger on the paragraph. Tom read it over and over again; there could be no mistake of identity, though the account was short enough.

"Thank you," said he at last, dropping the paper. "I shall go for a walk: don't you and Herbert wait supper¹ for me." And away he strode, up over the moor at the back of the house, to be alone, and master his grief if possible.

His friend looked after him, sympathising and wondering, and, knocking the ashes out of his pipe, walked over to Herbert. After a short parley, they walked together up to the house.

"I'm afraid that confounded newspaper has spoiled Brown's fun for this trip."

"How odd that he should be so fond of his old master," said Herbert. Yet they also were both public-school men.

The two, however, notwithstanding Tom's prohibition, waited supper for him, and had everything ready when he came back some half-an-hour afterwards. But he could not join in their cheerful talk, and the party was soon silent, notwithstanding the efforts of all three. One thing only had Tom re-

¹ wait supper, siehe S. 284.

solved, and that was, that he couldn't stay in Scotland any longer; he felt an irresistible longing to get to Rugby, and then home, and soon broke it to the others, who had too much tact to oppose.

So by daylight the next morning he was marching through Ross-shire¹, and in the evening hit the Caledonian canal, took the next steamer, and travelled as fast as boat and railway could carry him to the Rugby station.

As he walked up to the town, he felt shy and afraid of being seen, and took the back streets; why, ³¹⁶ he didn't know, but he followed his instinct. At the school-gates he made a dead pause; there was not a soul in the quadrangle—all was lonely, and silent, and sad. So with another effort he strode through the quadrangle, and into the School-house offices.

He found the little matron in her room in deep mourning; shook her hand, tried to talk, and moved nervously about: she was evidently thinking of the same subject as he, but he couldn't begin talking.

"Where shall I find Thomas?" said he at last, getting desperate.

"In the servants' hall, I think, sir. But won't you take anything?" said the matron, looking rather disappointed.

"No, thank you," said he, and strode off again to find the old Verger², who was sitting in his little den as of old, puzzling over hieroglyphics.

He looked up through his spectacles, as Tom seized his hand and wrung it.

"Ah! you've heard all about it, sir, I see," said he.

Tom nodded, and then sat down on the shoe-

¹ Ross-shire. Die Ostspitze der Insel Skye liegt gegenüber der Grenze von Ross-shire im Norden und Inverness-shire im Süden; die erstere Grafschaft reicht bis an Moray (Murray) Firth, welche Bucht durch den Kaledonischen Kanal mit der Irischen See verbunden wird.

² Verger, siehe S. 81.

board¹, while the old man told his tale, and wiped his spectacles, and fairly flowed over with quaint², homely, honest sorrow.

By the time he had done, Tom felt much better.

"Where is he buried, Thomas?" said he at last.

"Under the altar in the chapel, sir," answered Thomas. "You'd like to have the key, I dare say."

"Thank you, Thomas—Yes, I should very much." And the old man fumbled³ among his bunch, and then got up, as though he would go with him; but after a few steps stopped short, and said, "Perhaps you'd like to go by yourself, sir?"

Tom nodded, and the bunch of keys were handed 317 to him, with an injunction to be sure and lock the door after him, and bring them back before eight o'clock.

He walked quickly through the quadrangle and out into the close. The longing which had been upon him and driven him thus far, like the gad-fly in the Greek legends⁴, giving him no rest in mind or body, seemed all of a sudden not to be satisfied, but to shrivel up, and pall. "Why should I go on? It's no use," he thought, and threw himself at full length on the turf, and looked vaguely and listlessly at all the well-known objects. There were a few of the town boys playing cricket, their wicket pitched on the best piece in the middle of the big-side ground, a sin about equal to sacrilege in the eyes of a captain of the eleven. He was very nearly getting up to go

¹ shoe-board: *Bant zum Stiefelputzen. Thiem.*

² quaint: *naiv, mit eigentümlichem und etwas seltsamem Ausdruck.*

³ fumbled: *fühlte umher, von etwas ungeschicktem Suchen.*
Bunch (of keys), *Schlüsselbund.*

⁴ the gad-fly in the Greek legends: *die Bremse in der Sage von Io, der Tochter des Inachos und Geliebten des Zeus, welche, in eine Kuh verwandelt, nachdem ihr Hüter Argos von Hermes erschlagen ist, auf Veranstaltung der Here von einer Viehbremse zur Wut getrieben und von Land zu Land gejagt wird, bis sie am Nil Ruhe findet, ihre menschliche Gestalt wiedergewinnt und den Inachos gebiert.*

and send them off. "Pshaw! they won't remember me. They've more right there than I," he muttered. And the thought that his sceptre had departed, and his mark was wearing out¹, came home to him for the first time, and bitterly enough. He was lying on the very spot where the fights came off; where he himself had fought six years ago his first and last battle. He conjured up the scene till he could almost hear the shouts of the ring, and East's whisper in his ear; and looking across the close to the Doctor's private door, half expected to see it open, and the tall figure in cap and gown come striding under the elm-trees towards him.

No, no! that sight could never be seen again. There was no flag flying on the round tower²! the School-house windows were all shuttered up: and when the flag went up again, and the shutters came down, it would be to welcome a stranger. All that was left on earth of him whom he had honoured, was lying cold and still under the chapel floor. He would go in and see the place once more, and then leave it once for all. New men and new methods might do for other people; let those who would worship the rising star³; he at least would be faithful to the sun which had set. And so he got up and walked to the chapel door and unlocked it, fancying himself the only mourner in all the broad land, and feeding on his own selfish sorrow.

He passed through the vestibule, and then paused for a moment to glance over the empty benches. His heart was still proud and high, and he walked

¹ his mark was wearing out: die Spuren seines Wirkens wurden undeutlich. Man hat wohl bei dem bildlichen Ausdruck an ein Grenzzeichen, oder überhaupt an Bezeichnung des Eigentums zu denken, wie in Harry East his mark, S. 167.

² no flag flying on the round tower, siehe S. 293.

³ the rising star: the rising sun. Milt. Lyc. 168. The day-star. P. L. X, 1069. ~~This~~ diurnal star.

up to the seat which he had last occupied as a sixth-form boy, and sat himself down there to collect his thoughts.

And, truth to tell, they needed collecting and setting in order not a little. The memories of eight years were all dancing through his brain, and carrying him about whither they would; while beneath them all, his heart was throbbing with the dull sense of a loss that could never be made up to him. The rays of the evening sun came solemnly through the painted windows above his head, and fell in gorgeous colours on the opposite wall, and the perfect stillness soothed his spirit by little and little. And he turned to the pulpit, and looked at it, and then, leaning forward with his head on his hands, groaned aloud. "If he could only have seen the Doctor again for one five minutes; have told him all that was in his heart, what he owed to him, how he loved and revered him, and would by God's help follow his steps in life and death, he could have borne it all without a murmur. But that he should have gone away for ever without knowing it all, was too much to bear."—"But am I sure that he does not know it all?"—the thought made him start—"May he not even now be near me, in this very chapel? If he be, am I sorrowing as he would have me sorrow—as I should wish to have sorrowed when I shall meet him again?"

He raised himself up and looked round; and after a minute rose and walked humbly down to the lowest bench, and sat down on the very seat which
319 he had occupied on his first Sunday at Rugby. And then the old memories rushed back again, but softened and subdued, and soothing him as he let himself be carried away by them. And he looked up at the great painted window above the altar, and remembered how when a little boy he used to try not to look through it at the elm-trees and the rooks, be-

fore the painted glass came—and the subscription for the painted glass, and the letter he wrote home for money to give to it. And there, down below, was the very name of the boy who sat on his right hand on that first day, scratched rudely in the oak paneling.

And then came the thought of all his old school-fellows; and form after form of boys, nobler, and braver, and purer than he, rose up and seemed to rebuke him. Could he not think of them, and what they had felt and were feeling, they who had honoured and loved from the first, the man whom he had taken years¹ to know and love? Could he not think of those yet dearer to him who was gone, who bore his name and shared his blood, and were now without a husband or a father? Then the grief which he began to share with others became gentle and holy, and he rose up once more, and walked up the steps to the altar; and while the tears flowed freely down his cheeks, knelt down humbly and hopefully, to lay down there his share of a burden which had proved itself too heavy for him to bear in his own strength.

Here let us leave him—where better could we leave him, than at the altar, before which he had first caught a glimpse of the glory of his birthright, and felt the drawing of the bond² which links all living souls together in one brotherhood—at the grave beneath the altar of him, who had opened his eyes to see that glory, and softened his heart till it could feel that bond?

And let us not be hard on him, if at that moment his soul is fuller of the tomb and him who lies there, 320 than of the altar and Him of whom it speaks. Such

¹ he had taken years: er hatte Jahre gebraucht; sonst auch it had taken him years: es hatte Jahre gekostet.

² the drawing of the bond: wie das Band (die Schlinge) fester angezogen wurde.

stages have to be gone through, I believe, by all young and brave souls, who must win their way through hero-worship, to the worship of Him who is the King and Lord of heroes. For it is only through our mysterious human relationships, through the love and tenderness and purity of mothers, and sisters, and wives, through the strength and courage and wisdom of fathers, and brothers, and teachers, that we can come to the knowledge of Him, in whom alone the love, and the tenderness, and the purity, and the strength, and the courage, and the wisdom of all these dwell for ever and ever in perfect fulness.

Anhang.

Cricket.

Das cricket oder Thorballspiel, welches in England nationale Bedeutung hat, ist keineswegs, wie man vielleicht vermuten dürfte, sehr alt, obgleich es allerdings aus dem schon im 14. Jahrhundert bekannten club-ball hervorgegangen zu sein scheint. Der Name hat sich erst aus dem Jahre 1750 nachweisen lassen; derselbe beruht nicht, wie man bisweilen angegeben findet, auf einer Zusammenziehung aus cross-wicket, sondern enthält ein mit der Diminutivendung -et versehenes alt-englisches Wort crice, Stab, unser „Kriide“. Wie die deutsche Bezeichnung andeutet, handelt es sich um die Verteidigung eines thorähnlichen Males mit dem Ballholz gegen den, welcher es durch Wurf mit dem Ball angreift.

Die Bälle sind groß, fest und elastisch; sie haben ein Gewicht von ungefähr 160 Gramm, etwa 23 Centimeter im Umfang oder 7 Centimeter Durchmesser, bestehen aus zusammengepreßten Lederstücken, in der Regel mit gleichfalls zusammengepreßtem Kork als Kern, und sind mit dicken Leder überzogen. Das Schlagholz (bat) in einer Höhe von ziemlich einem Meter (höchstens 0,965 Meter), muß Festigkeit mit möglicher Leichtigkeit vereinigen. Daher verfertigt man es aus Weidenholz, das aber zusammengehämmert wird, um ihm Widerstandsfähigkeit zu verleihen. Der untere, einen Decimeter breite Teil (das Schlagende) hat leicht gewölbte Seiten-

flächen und ist am Ende abgerundet. Der Griff hat eine Länge, die etwas mehr als die Hälfte des Schlagendes beträgt, und eine Stärke, so daß er bequem gefaßt werden kann; er wird oft aus Rohr gemacht und in diesem Falle in das Schlagende eingefügt, stets aber, um fest in der Hand zu liegen, mit Bindfaden umwickelt.

Der Boden des Spielplatzes muß möglichst eben und horizontal sein; man wählt dazu eine weite Fläche mit kurz geschorenem Rasen, der jedesmal, wenn es etwas gilt, vorher besprengt und gewalzt zu werden pflegt. Es wird nun ein Kampfplatz von etwa 100 Meter im Quadrat abgesteckt, und durch Aufpflanzen von Flaggen an den Ecken den Zuschauern bedeutet, daß sie sich während des Spiels außerhalb der Grenzen zu halten haben. In der Mitte des Raumes zieht man zwei parallele Linien in einer Entfernung von 20 Meter und pflanzt auf denselben einander gerade gegenüber die sogenannten wickets (Thore) auf. Zu der Bildung eines solchen gehören drei runde, unten zugespitzte Stäbe (stumps), die neben einander senkrecht in den Boden gestochen werden, so daß sie 68 Centimeter hervorragen. Sie haben oben einen kleinen Einschnitt, der dazu bestimmt ist, daß man zwei kleine Querschläger (bails), deren Länge je einen Decimeter beträgt, auf dieselben legt. So wird also eine Art Thor hergestellt, durch dessen Stäbe der Ball nicht hindurchfliegen kann, ohne sie umzureißen. Für das richtige Aufpflanzen der wickets wird Sorge getragen von zwei Unparteiischen (umpires), die zugleich darüber wachen, daß die Spielregeln beobachtet werden, und in allen streitigen Fällen die Entscheidung haben.

Zu einem regelmäßigen Cricketspiel mit zwei Thoren (double wicket) gehören zwei Parteien von je elf Spielern, von denen die der Verteidiger oder Schläger als in-party, die der Angreifenden als out-party bezeichnet wird. Jede derselben hat ihren Führer (captain), der den Schlachtplan entwirft und die Streitkräfte je nach ihren besonderen Fähigkeiten verteilt. Zu Anfang des Spiels findet ein Wosen (tossing up, S. 88) statt; die gewinnende Partei darf wählen, ob sie angreifen oder verteidigen will. In der Regel wählt sie die Verteidigung der wickets, wird also in-party und hat das erste Schlagspiel (the first innings). Bei einem Wettspiel (match) erhält jede Partei zwei innings.

Von der in-party kommen jedesmal nur zwei als Schläger (batsmen, strikers) ans Spiel, von denen jeder sich vor dem von ihm zu verteidigenden Thor aufstellt. Die durch dasselbe hindurchlaufende Linie, in deren Mitte es also aufgepflanzt ist, hat eine Länge von zwei Meter; sie heißt bowling crease (Schodmal, von dem mit Schodwurf wiedergegebenen bowling), indem sie die Grenze bezeichnet, über welche der Werfende beim Wurf nicht vortreten darf. Jeder Endpunkt derselben ist wieder durch eine dazu senkrechte, rückwärts gehende Linie (return crease) bezeichnet, über welche der Schläger sich nicht seitwärts entfernen darf. Vor dem Schodmal läuft parallel damit in einer Entfernung von vier Fuß eine andere Linie (popping crease, das Schlagmal). An diesem

stellt sich der Schläger mit der linken Schulter nach dem anderen Male zu auf, so daß der rechte Fuß dicht hinter dem Schlagmal und in dessen Richtung aufgesetzt ist, während der linke Fuß etwa rechtwinklig zu jenem und in einer Entfernung von 1—2 Fuß vorgestreckt wird (Gardstellung). In gerader Richtung von dem wicket hat der Schläger sich ein Schlagzeichen (block) gemacht, in welches er das Ballholz beim Abwarten des Wurfs setzt, worin er es auch hält, wenn er den Ball nicht fortschlagen, sondern nur parieren und sein Anspringen gegen das wicket hindern will. Beim Schlage steht er ganz gerade und führt denselben gewöhnlich, indem er vom wicket her ausholt. Die erste Aufgabe des Schlägers ist Verteidigung seines Males; denn wird dasselbe vom Ball getroffen, so muß er abtreten. Wirklichen Vorteil bringt er seiner Partei aber nur durch Fortschlagen des Balls, wobei er sich jedoch hüten muß, den Gegnern Gelegenheit zum Fangen zu geben, weil er selbst in diesem Falle gleichfalls ab (out) sein würde. Der Ball kann nach allen Richtungen des Feldes hingeschlagen werden, und es kommt darauf an, ihn so zu schlagen, daß die Gegner ihn nicht zu bald wieder in die Hände bekommen. Das Mal gilt als gedeckt, wenn der Schläger sein bat hinter dem popping crease auf den Boden hält oder darüber steht; sonst darf einer der Gegenpartei es mit dem Balle umwerfen. So lange der Schläger dies nicht zu befürchten hat, läuft er nach erfolgtem Schlage von seinem Male nach dem gegenüberstehenden und wieder zurück, indem sein Mitspieler, der Verteidiger des anderen Males, dasselbe thut. Jeder Lauf (run), den beide auf diese Weise bewerkstelligen, bringt der Partei einen Point ein, und nach der Zahl der Läufe auf beiden Seiten entscheidet sich das Spiel zu Gunsten der einen oder der anderen Partei.

Das Werfen des Balles (bowling, der Schoßwurf) erfolgt eigentlich in ähnlicher Weise, wie ein Pistolettwurf beim Kegeln, nur daß etwas weiter ausgeholt wird. Der Ball ruht auf der wie beim Kegeln darunter gehaltenen Hand und wird vom Schoßmal aus in ziemlich gerader Richtung auf das gegenüberstehende wicket zu geschleudert, so daß er etwa drei Viertel der Strecke im Bogen durchfliegt, dann auf den Boden aufsetzt und gegen das Mal anprallt. Es ist jedoch nicht notwendig, daß der Ball auf den Boden aufschlägt, auch darf er denselben mehr als einmal berühren. Den eigentlichen Gegensatz zu jener Art des Werfens (underhand bowling) bezeichnet round hand (richtiger round arm) bowling, wobei der Arm des Werfenden einen Bogen von hinten nach vorn beschreibt, indem die Hand bis zur Schulterhöhe erhoben wird. Der Werfer nimmt wie beim Kegeln einen Anlauf, muß aber zwischen den beiden Seitenlinien, so wie mit einem Fuße hinter dem Schoßmal (bowling crease) bleiben.

Die angreifende Partei führt ihre sämtlichen elf Spieler ins Feld. Einer derselben ist Werfer und hat hintereinander vier Würfe. Er bleibt während dieser Würfe auf derselben Stelle und greift dasselbe wicket an, hat also auch denselben Schläger sich gegenüber, sofern nicht durch eine

ungerade Zahl von Läufen die Schläger ihren Posten wechseln. Die übrigen zehn Spieler sind Aufpasser (fielders) und haben die Aufgabe, sich des vom Schläger getroffenen (oder auch nicht getroffenen) Balles möglichst bald zu bemächtigen und zu verhindern, daß die beiden Schläger Läufe machen. Sie werden von dem Führer der Partei (captain) je nach ihren besonderen Leistungen auf Posten gestellt, die ein für allemal bestimmt sind. Unmittelbar hinter dem anzugreifenden Male steht der Thorwart (wicket-keeper), gewöhnlich der captain selbst, wenn er nicht gerade am Wurf ist; dieser sucht die vom Schläger durchgelassenen Bälle abzufangen. Zu demselben Zwecke hat er noch einen Hintermann (long stop) in weiterer Entfernung von dem Male. Die anderen Posten ergeben sich aus dem Situationsplan.

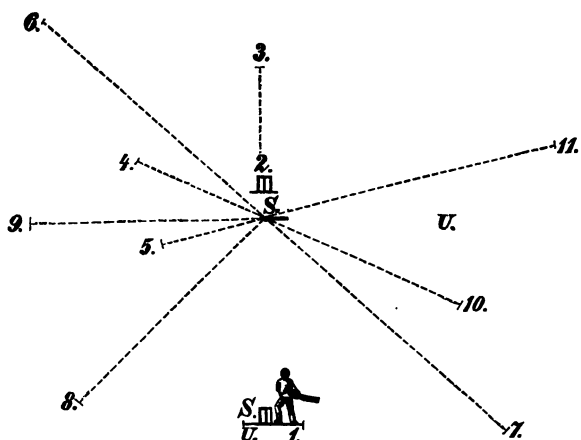
Nach vier Würfen (auch wohl fünf oder sechs, je nach besonderer Übereinkunft) findet ein Umgang statt, wozu der Unparteiische durch den Ruf over auffordert. Das Werfen erfolgt nun von dem bis jetzt angegriffenen Male aus auf das gegenüberstehende, und die Aufpasser müssen daher zu dem letzteren dieselbe Stellung wie vorher zu dem anderen einnehmen. Indem ein anderer Spieler ans Werfen kommt, tritt der bisherige Werfer anderswo ein; oft übernimmt er den Posten des Thorwarts.

Kommt ein Schläger durch Fangen des geschlagenen Balles, ehe er den Boden berührt hat, oder durch Berühren seines Males ab, sei es nun, daß er den Ball nicht pariert, oder daß das ungedeckte Mal während des Laufens von einem Spieler der Gegenpartei mit dem aufgefangenen Balle umgeworfen, oder auch nur berührt wird; so tritt ein anderer Schläger an seine Stelle. Wenn schon die beiden letzten Schläger am Schlagen sind und einer derselben abkommt, so ist der Gang (innings) beendet, und die bisherige out-party wechselt ihre Rolle, oder hat ihre innings. Zu einer regelmäßigen Partie oder einem Wettkampf (match) gehören nach dem schon Angegebenen, wenn nicht ein besonderes Übereinkommen getroffen wird, je zwei innings der beiden Parteien. Diejenige gewinnt, welche in beiden innings zusammen die meisten Läufe macht.

Die Cricketspieler haben ein eigenes Kostüm. Sie tragen weiße Flanellhosen und weiße oder bunte Hemden, gleichfalls aus Flanell oder aus Kammgarn (jersey, S. 87), über die auch eine Jacke oder ein kurzer Rock gezogen werden kann, endlich in der Regel eine leichte, meist farbige Tuchmütze mit kurzem Schirm. Viele setzen aber auch einen Strohhut oder runden Filzhut auf. Dazu kommen noch derbe Schuhe von weißem oder ungefärbtem Leder mit starken Nägeln, oft auch mit Spitzen. Das Tragen von besonderen Cricketgürteln kommt immer mehr ab. Der wicket-keeper hat Handschuhe mit kurzem Stulp, die zum Teil gepolstert sind (wicket-keeping gloves, gauntlets); die der Schläger (battling gloves) sind außen mit Kautschuk befest, lassen aber durch einen Ausschnitt die Handfläche frei zum festeren Halten des Ballholzes. Diese Schläger tragen außerdem noch gepolsterte Lederschienen

für beide Unterschenkel (pads or guards). Zum An- und Auskleiden pflegt ein Belt aufgeschlagen zu werden.

In betreff des Situationsplans, einer Kopie des zweiten Diagramms in Routledge's Handbook of Cricket, by Edmund Routledge, ist zu bemerken, daß die Aufstellung der fielders etwas verschieden ist für fast roundarm bowling und slow underhand bowling. Außerdem spart man häufig den Posten des longstop durch Aufspannen eines Netzes hinter dem wicket-keeper und stellt in diesem Falle einen andern Posten, square leg, auf zwischen leg und mid-wicket on, in derselben Entfernung vom Male wie long on.



S. Striker, Schläger.

1. Bowler, Werfer.

2. Wicket-keeper, Thorwart.

3. Long Stop, Hintermann.

4. Short Slip, Queraß.

5. Point, Kurzab.

6. Long Slip, Weitaß.

7. Long On, Weitan.

8. Long Off, Weitaß.

9. Cover Point, Mittenab.

10. Mid-wicket on, Mittenan.

11. Leg, Schrägab.

U. Umpire.

Verbesserungen und Nachträge.

§. 183. Caldecott's Spinney. Statt südwestlich muß es heißen nordwestlich. Es ist ein Gehäusch auf einem Abhang am Avon, etwas mehr als eine englische Meile von der Schule und dicht bei Holbrook Grange, wo ein Zweig der Familie Caldecott lebt. "Old Caldecott (§. 226) was Mr. John Caldecott, Lord of the Manor of Rugby."

§. 223. Dem Citat I have found out a gift for my fair ist im Original des Werkes als Verfasser Rowe fälschlich hinzugefügt. Die Verse sind von William Shenstone (1714—1764) und finden sich in A Pastoral, In Four Parts. II. Hope. Dessen Gedicht steht in mehreren Sammlungen, z. B. in Selections from the Works of the British Classical Poets from Shakespeare to Shelley, by Maria Mary Martinack. Leipz. 1861. Das Ganze ist gegeben von R. Chambers in der Cyclopædia of English Literature.

§. 236. Gee'd 'em a sight of good advice ist der Ms. Ballad entlehnt, aus der ein Citat zu Anfang des 4. Kapitels (§. 223) steht. Über dieselbe hat mir Herr George Stallard in Rugby auf Grund einer Mitteilung von Thomas Hughes folgendes geschrieben: "It was written by his father at Oriel.¹ in 1813 on a scout (*i. e.* college servant) who used to rob there, and was sent to prison for stealing a tutor's shoes. His name was William Taylor, and so of course the "Billy Taylor" metre² was adopted. The passage was (the tutor is the hero):

Next morn he com'd unto the Castle
And got poor Billy off in a trice,
And then he talked like any Apostle,
And ge'd 'm a sight of good advice.

Sez he, "you've scaped from transportation
All upon the briny main,
And so beware of all temptation,
And don't get drunk or prig again.

If you would but keep your noddle sober,
And your hands from theft and stealth,

¹ Bekanntes college in Oxford.

² Vergl. Part I, Anhang, §. 262.

You might be churchwarden before all's over,
And so arrive at fame and wealth.

And now, my lad, take them five shilling,
And on my advice in future think;"
So Billy pouched them all so willing,
And got that night disguised in drink.

§. 296. Almost wide to the off. Über die return creases
vergl. den Anhang, §. 186. Ob ein Ball a wide ist, wird vom Un-
parteiischen entschieden.

Durch ein Versehen ist im Anhang zum ersten Teil folgendes Lied
ausgelassen:

A wet sheet and a flowing sea,
by Allan Cunningham. (§. 102.)

A wet sheet and a flowing sea,
A wind that follows fast,
And fills the white and rustling sail,
And bends the gallant mast;
And bends the gallant mast, my boys,
While, like the eagle free,
Away the good ship flies, and leaves
Old England on the lea.

Oh, for a soft and gentle wind!
I heard a fair one cry,
But give to me the snoring breeze,
And white waves heaving high;
And white waves heaving high, my boys,
The good ship tight and free—
The world of waters is our home,
And merry men are we.

There's tempest in yon horned moon,
And lightning in yon cloud;
And hark the music, mariners,
The wind is piping loud;
The wind is piping loud, my boys,
The lightning flashing free—
While the hollow oak our palace is,
Our heritage the sea.

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 010 660 095

ARY

urned on
low.

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
CECIL H. GREEN LIBRARY
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004
(415) 723-1493

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

28D AUG 14 1995

AUG 14 1995

Stanford University Library

Stanford University Libraries

In order that books may be recalled after 7 days,
please return them as soon as possible, but
not later than the date due.

Februar 1888.

STUDENTS' TAUCHNITZ EDITIONS.

- EDWARD BULWER (LORD LYTTON), THE LADY OF LYONS. Von Dr. *Fritz Bischoff*, Erster Lehrer am Lehrerinnen-Seminar und der Augusta-Schule in Berlin. br. *M* 0,50. kart. *M* 0,60.
- THOS. CARLYLE, THE REIGN OF TERROR (French Revolution). Von Dr. *Ludwig Herrig*, Prof. an der K. Kriegs-Akademie in Berlin. br. *M* 1,00. kart. *M* 1,10.
- CHAS. DICKENS, SKETCHES. First Series. Von Dr. *A. Hoppe*, Prof. am Berlinischen Gymnasium zum Grauen Kloster. br. *M* 1,20. kart. *M* 1,30.
- Second Series. Von Dr. *A. Hoppe*. brosch. *M* 1,40. kart. *M* 1,50.
- GEORGE ELIOT, THE MILL ON THE FLOSS. Von Dr. *H. Conrad*, ord. Lehrer a. d. K. Hauptkadettenanstalt zu Lichterfelde. br. *M* 1,70. kart. *M* 1,80.
- EDWARD FREEMAN, THREE HISTORICAL ESSAYS. Von Dr. *C. Balzer*, Prof. am Realgymnasium zu Eisenach. br. *M* 0,70. kart. *M* 0,80.
- BRET HARTE, TALES OF THE ARGONAUTS. Von Dr. *G. Tanger*, an der Luisenstädtischen Oberrealschule zu Berlin. br. *M* 1,40. kart. *M* 1,50.
- THOS. HUGHES, TOM BROWN'S SCHOOL DAYS. Von Dr. *Immanuel Schmidt*, Professor an der K. Hauptkadettenanstalt zu Lichterfelde. 2 Parts. br. *M* 3,00. kart. *M* 3,20. Part I. br. *M* 1,70. kart. *M* 1,80. Part II. br. *M* 1,30. kart. *M* 1,40.
- H. W. LONGFELLOW, TALES OF A WAYSIDE INN. Von Dr. *H. Vauthagen*, Prof. an der Universität zu Erlangen. 2 Bände. br. *M* 2,00. kart. *M* 2,20. 1. Band br. *M* 1,00. kart. *M* 1,10. 2. Band br. *M* 1,00. kart. *M* 1,10.
- LORD MACAULAY, ENGLAND BEFORE THE RESTORATION. (History of England. Chapter I.) Von Dr. *W. Ihne*, Prof. an der Universität in Heidelberg. br. *M* 0,70. kart. *M* 0,80.
- ENGLAND UNDER CHARLES THE SECOND. (History of England. Chapter II.) Von Dr. *W. Ihne*. br. *M* 1,00. kart. *M* 1,10.
- LORD CLIVE. (Historical Essay.) Von Prof. Dr. *R. Thum*, Direktor der Realschule zu Reichenbach i./V. brosch. *M* 1,40. kart. *M* 1,50.
- RANKE'S HISTORY OF THE POPES. Von Prof. Dr. *R. Thum*. br. *M* 0,60. kart. *M* 0,70.
- WARREN HASTINGS. (Historical Essay.) Von Prof. Dr. *R. Thum*. br. *M* 1,50. kart. *M* 1,60.
- JUSTIN MCCARTHY, THE INDIAN MUTINY. (Chap. 32—35 of "A History of our own Times.") Von Dr. *Albert Hamann*, Oberlehrer an der Luisenschule zu Berlin. br. *M* 0,60. kart. *M* 0,70.
- SIR WALTER SCOTT, THE TALISMAN. Von Dr. *R. Dressel*, Oberlehrer am Königl. Realgymnasium zu Berlin. br. *M* 1,60. kart. *M* 1,70.
- TALES OF A GRANDFATHER. First Series. Von Dr. *H. Löschhorn*, ord. Lehrer am Andreas-Realgymnasium zu Berlin. br. *M* 1,50. kart. *M* 1,60.
- Second Series. Von Dr. *H. Löschhorn*. br. *M* 1,70. kart. *M* 1,80.
- WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE, TWELFTH NIGHT; OR, WHAT YOU WILL. Von Dr. *Hermann Conrad*, ord. Lehrer an der K. Hauptkadettenanstalt zu Lichterfelde. br. *M* 1,40. kart. *M* 1,50.
- EARL STANHOPE (LORD MAHON), PRINCE CHARLES STUART. (History of England from the Peace of Utrecht to the Peace of Versailles. 1713—1783.) Von Dr. *Martin Krummacker*, Direktor der höheren Mädchenschule zu Kassel. br. *M* 1,20. kart. *M* 1,30.
- LORD TENNYSON, ENOCH ARDEN AND OTHER POEMS. Von Dr. *Albert Hamann*, Oberlehrer an der Luisenschule zu Berlin, Hon. Master of Arts of the University of Oxford. br. *M* 0,70. kart. *M* 0,80.
- W. M. THACKERAY, SAMUEL TITMARSH AND THE GREAT HOGGARTY DIAMOND. Von *George Boyle*, Prof. an der K. preuss. Artillerie- und Ingenieur-Schule zu Charlottenburg. br. *M* 1,20. kart. *M* 1,30.